

**Lucent Technologies**  
Bell Labs Innovations



Installation and Switch Administration  
for the

**DEFINITY<sup>®</sup> AUDIX<sup>®</sup> System**  
**Release 4.0**

G3r switches

TN2181 emulation

Display Set Integration

585-300-122  
Comcode 108473489  
Issue 1  
May 1999

## Notice

Every effort was made to ensure that the information in this book was complete and accurate at the time of printing. However, information is subject to change.

## Your Responsibility for Your System's Security

Toll fraud is the unauthorized use of your telecommunications system by an unauthorized party, for example, persons other than your company's employees, agents, subcontractors, or persons working on your company's behalf. Note that there may be a risk of toll fraud associated with your telecommunications system and, if toll fraud occurs, it can result in substantial additional charges for your telecommunications services.

You and your system manager are responsible for the security of your system, such as programming and configuring your equipment to prevent unauthorized use. The system manager is also responsible for reading all installation, instruction, and system administration documents provided with this product in order to fully understand the features that can introduce risk of toll fraud and the steps that can be taken to reduce that risk. Lucent Technologies does not warrant that this product is immune from or will prevent unauthorized use of common-carrier telecommunication services or facilities accessed through or connected to it. Lucent Technologies will not be responsible for any charges that result from such unauthorized use.

## Lucent Technologies Fraud Intervention

If you suspect you are being victimized by toll fraud and you need technical support or assistance, call the appropriate BCS National Customer Care Center telephone number. Users of the MERLIN®, PARTNER®, and System 25 products should call 1 800 628 2888. Users of the System 75, System 85, DEFINITY® Generic 1, 2 and 3, and DEFINITY® ECS products should call 1 800 643 2353. Customers outside the continental United States should contact their local Lucent representative, or call one of the above numbers in the following manner:

- Dial the International Access Code; for example, 011.
- Dial the country code for the U.S., that is, 01.
- Lastly, dial either of the telephone numbers provided above.

## Lucent Technologies Web Page

The world wide web home page for Lucent Technologies is:  
<http://www.lucent.com>

## Federal Communications Commission Statement

**Part 15: Class A Statement.** This equipment has been tested and found to comply with the limits for a Class A digital device, pursuant to Part 15 of the FCC Rules. These limits are designed to provide reasonable protection against harmful interference when the equipment is operated in a commercial environment. This equipment generates, uses, and can radiate radio-frequency energy and, if not installed and used in accordance with the instructions, may cause harmful interference to radio communications. Operation of this equipment in a residential area is likely to cause harmful interference, in which case the user will be required to correct the interference at his own expense.

## Industry Canada (IC) Interference Information

This digital apparatus does not exceed the Class A limits for radio noise emissions set out in the radio interference regulations of Industry Canada.

Le Présent Appareil Numérique n'émet pas de bruits radioélectriques dépassant les limites applicables aux appareils numériques de la class A préscrites dans le règlement sur le brouillage radioélectrique édicté par le Industrie Canada.

## Trademarks

See the preface of this document.

## Ordering Information

**Call:** Lucent Technologies BCS Publications Center  
Voice 1 800 457-1235 International Voice 317 322-6791  
Fax 1 800 457-1764 International Fax 317 322-6699

**Write:** Lucent Technologies BCS Publications Center  
2855 N. Franklin Road  
Indianapolis, IN 46219

**Order:** Document No. 585-300-122  
Comcode 108473489  
Issue 1, May 1999

For additional documents, refer to the section in "About This Document" entitled "Related Resources."

You can be placed on a standing order list for this and other documents you may need. For more information on standing orders, or to be put on a list to receive future issues of this document, contact the Lucent Technologies Publications Center.

## Obtaining Products

To learn more about Lucent Technologies products and to order products, contact Lucent Direct, the direct-market organization of Lucent Technologies Business Communications Systems. Access their web site at [www.lucentdirect.com](http://www.lucentdirect.com). Or call the following numbers: customers 1 800 451 2100, account executives 1 888 778 1880 (voice) or 1 888 778 1881 (fax).

## Warranty

Lucent Technologies provides a limited warranty on this product. Refer to the "Limited Use Software License Agreement" card provided with your package.

## European Union Declaration of Conformity

The "CE" mark affixed to the equipment means that it conforms to the following directives. Lucent Technologies Business Communications Systems declares that DEFINITY AUDIX System equipment specified in this document conforms to the referenced European Union (EU) Directives and Harmonized Standards listed below:

EMC Directive 89/336/EEC  
Low-Voltage Directive 73/23/EEC

## Acknowledgment

This document was prepared by OMD Technical Publications, Lucent Technologies, Denver, CO. and Columbus, OH.

# Contents

	<b>Contents</b>	<b>iii</b>
	<b>About This Document</b>	<b>xi</b>
	■ Overview	xi
	■ Intended Audiences	xi
	■ Prerequisite Skills and Knowledge	xii
	■ Trademarks and Service Marks	xii
	■ Organization of This Document	xii
	■ How to Use This Document	xiv
	■ Conventions Used in This Document	xiv
	■ Related Resources	xv
	■ How to Get Help	xvi
	■ How to Make Comments About This Document	xvi
<b>1</b>	<b>Prerequisites</b>	<b>1-1</b>
	■ Display Set and Control-Link Integration	1-1
	Task 3-1: Verify the Selected Site	1-2
	Task 3-2: Gather the Required Tools	1-2
	Task 3-3: Review Safety Considerations	1-3
	Task 3-4: Verify the Components and Connectivity	1-3
	Task 3-5: Complete the Worksheets	1-6
<b>2</b>	<b>Hardware Installation</b>	<b>2-1</b>
	■ Worksheets Needed	2-1
	Task 4-1: Install the DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly	2-2
	Slot and Carrier Restrictions	2-4
	DEFINITY AUDIX System Slots	2-4
	Installation Steps	2-5
	Task 4-2: Connect to the System Adaptor Cable	2-9
	Alarm Origination/Remote Access Connection	2-9
	LAN Connection	2-11
	Port Connections for DS Integration	2-13

	Task 4-3: Install the Terminals	2-13
	3A: Installing a Terminal via Direct Connection	2-14
	3B: Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via Modem	2-16
	3C: Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via Asynchronous Data Units (ADUs)	2-19
	3D: Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via 7400A Data Modules	2-21
	Task 4-4: Install the Printer (Optional)	2-24
	Task 4-5: Finalize and Test the Hardware	2-25
<b>3</b>	<b>Definity AUDIX Option Administration</b>	<b>3-1</b>
	■ Worksheets Needed	3-1
	■ Dual Administration on the 715 Terminal	3-1
	■ DEFINITY AUDIX Function Keys	3-2
	Task 5-1: Activate Customer Options	3-3
<b>4</b>	<b>Initial Switch Administration: G3r/R5r</b>	<b>4-1</b>
	■ Worksheets Needed	4-1
	■ What You Must Know Before You Begin This Chapter	4-2
	■ Translation Overview Tables	4-2
	■ Administration Overview	4-4
	Native Mode of the Switch	4-4
	Digital Networking Availability	4-5
	Summary of Integrations, Emulations, and Capacities	4-5
	■ TN2181 (Digital Port) Emulation, Display Set Integration	4-6
	Task 6-1: Identifying the DEFINITY AUDIX Circuit Pack	4-6
	Task 6-2: Assigning the User Defined Adjunct Names	4-10
	Task 6-3: Creating the Hunt Group	4-11
	Task 6-4: Defining the Call Coverage Path for Voice Ports	4-16
	Task 6-5: Defining Call Coverage Paths for Subscribers	4-18
	Task 6-6: Administering the Voice Ports as Stations	4-20
	Rules for Administering the Voice Ports	4-21
	6A: Completing the Station Screen	4-21
	6B: Assigning the Call Appearance Buttons	4-30
	6C: Assigning the Feature Buttons	4-33
	6D: Assigning the Display Buttons	4-33
	6E: Duplicating the Stations	4-34

Task 6-7: Assigning Voice Ports to the Hunt Group	4-35
Task 6-8: Administering the Digital Networking Port (Optional)	4-37

<b>5</b>	<b>Initial Definity AUDIX Administration</b>	<b>5-1</b>
■	Worksheets Needed	5-1
	Task 7-1: Perform Initial DEFINITY AUDIX Administration	5-2
	1A: Set the DEFINITY AUDIX Clock	5-2
	1B: Assign the Time Zone	5-4
	1C: Assign the DEFINITY AUDIX Machine Parameters	5-6
	1D: Run the Switch Translations Audit	5-7
	1E: Administer Voice Ports	5-8
	1F: Set Switch-Link Parameters	5-10
	1G: Set System Parameters Limits	5-11
	1H: Set System Parameters for INTUITY Message Manager	5-12
	1I: Reboot the DEFINITY AUDIX System	5-14
	1J: Run the Switch Names Audit	5-16
	Task 7-2: Activate Parameters and Basic Features	5-17
	Task 7-3: Add Magneto-Optical Disks	5-19
	Task 7-4: Check the Status of the Switch Names Audit	5-21
	Task 7-5: Check Alarm Status	5-24

<b>6</b>	<b>Optional Switch Feature Administration</b>	<b>6-1</b>
■	Worksheets Needed	6-2
■	Automated Attendant Administration	6-2
	Generic 3, Version 2 and Greater Switches	6-2
	Assigning a Phantom Station	6-2
	Assigning a Hunt Group	6-3
	Night Service to an Automated Attendant	6-3
	From an Incoming Trunk	6-4
	From a Listed Directory Number (LDN)	6-4
■	Automated Attendant Substitute Strategies	6-5
	Generic 3, Release 5, and Newer Switches	6-5
■	Switch Recorded Announcement	6-6
■	Switch Multiple Coverage Paths	6-8
■	Listed Directory Number (LDN) Night Destination	6-8
■	Continue with the Installation	6-8

<b>7</b>	<b>Joint Acceptance Testing</b>	<b>7-1</b>
	■ Acceptance Check Tasks	7-1
	■ Worksheets Needed	7-1
	Task 9-1: Add Two Test Subscribers	7-2
	Task 9-2: Test the Call Answer and Voice Mail Features	7-3
	Task 9-3: Run Test MO-Disk	7-4
	Task 9-4: Test The Local Area Network	7-6
	Task 9-5: Clear Administration, Error, and Alarm Logs	7-8
<b>8</b>	<b>Initial Subscriber Administration</b>	<b>8-1</b>
	■ Initial Subscriber Administration Tasks	8-1
	■ Worksheets Needed	8-1
	Task 10-1: Optimize the Class of Service (COS) Values	8-2
	Task 10-2: Add the Initial Subscribers	8-3
	Task 10-3: Complete Initial Administration	8-5
<b>9</b>	<b>Final Switch Administration: G3r/R5r</b>	<b>9-1</b>
	Task 11-1: Modifying the Station Screen for Each Subscriber	9-1
<b>10</b>	<b>Customer Acceptance</b>	<b>10-1</b>
	Task 12-1: Alarm Origination Administration Test and Status MO Disk	10-1
	Task 12-2: Perform a Walk Through	10-5
	Task 12-3: Demonstrate Updated Customer Database	10-5
	Task 12-4: Project Review	10-5
<b>A</b>	<b>Switch Carrier Configuration Worksheets</b>	<b>A-1</b>
	Worksheet A-1: Port Slot Assignments (Before Carrier Rearrangement)	A-2
	Worksheet A-2: Port Slot Assignments (For Carrier Rearrangement)	A-4
	Worksheet A-3: Slot Locations for the DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly	A-5

<b>B</b>	<b>Switch Administration Worksheets</b>	<b>B-1</b>
	Worksheet B-1: Administer the Voice Ports as Stations (Digital Port Emulation)	B-3
	Worksheet B-2: Assign the Hunt Group (Digital Port Emulation)	B-6
	Worksheet B-3: Assign the Call Coverage Path for Voice Ports (Digital Port Emulation)	B-9
	Worksheet B-4: Assign the Call Coverage Path for Subscribers (Digital Port Emulation)	B-10
	Worksheet B-16: Administer Digital Networking Ports (Digital Port Emulation)	B-11
	Worksheet B-19: Administer a Modem – Digital Networking	B-12
<b>C</b>	<b>DEFINITY AUDIX System Administration Worksheets</b>	<b>C-1</b>
	Worksheet C-1: Activate Customer Options	C-2
	Worksheet C-2: Activate IMAPI for the AUDIX Server Hardware (LAN) Options	C-3
	Worksheet C-3: Assign the DEFINITY AUDIX Machine ID	C-4
	Worksheet C-5: Set System Parameters Limits	C-5
	Worksheet C-6: Assign the Time Zone	C-6
	Worksheet C-7: Activate Parameters and Basic Features	C-7
	Worksheet C-8: Add Subscribers	C-9
	Worksheet C-9: Set Up Alarm Origination	C-13
<b>D</b>	<b>Optional Features Worksheets</b>	<b>D-1</b>
	Worksheet D-1: Administering AMIS Analog Networking and Message Delivery	D-1
	Worksheet D-2: Automated Attendant	D-5
	Worksheet D-3: Administering a Bulletin Board	D-8
	Worksheet D-4: Administering Outcalling	D-9
	Worksheet D-5: Administering Switch Recorded Announcement	D-10
<b>E</b>	<b>Terminal Configuration</b>	<b>E-1</b>
	Worksheet E-1: Terminals	E-1

<b>F</b>	<b>Migration Procedure</b>	<b>F-1</b>
	■ Materials and Information Needed	F-2
	■ Migration Checklist	F-3
	Task F-1: Shut Down the DEFINITY AUDIX System	F-3
	Task F-2: Export the Switch Voice Ports	F-4
	Task F-3: Remove the Voice Ports from the Hunt Group	F-5
	Task F-4: Connect the External Tandberg Tape Drive	F-6
	Task F-5: Back-Up the DEFINITY AUDIX Data	F-7
	Task F-6: Remove the Existing DEFINITY AUDIX System	F-12
	Task F-7: Install DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0	F-13
	Task F-8: Restore the Existing Data	F-17
	Task F-9: Remove the Tape Drive	F-20
	Task F-10: Verify the DEFINITY AUDIX Administration	F-20
	10A: Display Customer Options	F-20
	10B: Verify the Voice Port Configuration	F-22
	10C: Verify the Subscribers	F-23
	Task F-11: Administer Changes to the Switch	F-23
	11A: Determine the Number of Voice Ports	F-23
	11B: Administer the Voice Port Station Screen	F-24
	11C: Add Voice Ports Back to the Hunt Group	F-27
	Task F-12: Complete Additional Migration Tasks	F-29
<b>G</b>	<b>Announcement Set Considerations and Installation</b>	<b>G-1</b>
	■ Customized Announcement and Fragments	G-1
	Customer Modified and Added Fragments	G-1
	Announcement Set Identifiers	G-1
	■ Installing Additional Language Sets	G-3
<b>H</b>	<b>Terminal and Modem Settings</b>	<b>H-1</b>
	■ Terminal Option Settings	H-1
	■ Modem Option Settings (for Port C Modems)	H-5
	US Robotics Sportster 33.6	H-5
	Paradyne Comsphere Models 3810 and 3820	H-6
	Paradyne Comsphere Model 3910	H-6
	Generic Modems	H-7
	7400A Data Module Settings	H-10
	7400B Data Module Settings	H-10

<b>I</b>	<b>Changing Switch Integrations, Port Emulations, and Number of Voice Ports</b>	<b>I-1</b>
■	Changing from Analog to Digital Port Emulation	I-1
	Verifying the Emulation and Integration Types	I-1
	Verifying the DEFINITY AUDIX TN568 Circuit Pack	I-2
	Administering the Voice Ports	I-2
	Changing the Hunt Group	I-2
	Adding the Voice Port Coverage Path	I-2
■	Changing from CL Integration — Analog to DS Integration — Digital	I-3
	Verifying the Emulation and Integration Types	I-3
	Removing Voice Ports	I-4
	Verifying the Port IDs of the Voice Ports	I-4
	Removing Existing Voice Ports	I-5
	Verifying the Circuit Pack	I-6
	Administering the Voice Ports	I-7
	Changing the Hunt Group	I-7
	Adding the Voice Port Coverage Path	I-8
	Changing Subscriber Stations	I-8
	Disabling the Data Link	I-8
■	Changing from DS Integration — Digital to CL Integration — Digital	I-9
	Turning Off Message Waiting Indicators	I-9
	Verifying the Emulation and Integration Types	I-10
	Verifying the Circuit Pack	I-10
	Assigning User Defined Adjunct Names (G3r Only)	I-11
	Re-administering the Voice Ports	I-11
	Changing the Hunt Group	I-11
	Assigning the Data Link	I-11
	Changing Subscriber Stations	I-12
	Checking the Switch Link	I-12

	■ Decreasing the Number of Digital Voice Ports from 12 to 8	I-13
	Changing the Voice Group Screen on the DEFINITY AUDIX System	I-13
	Verifying DEFINITY AUDIX Customer Options	I-13
	Add a Networking Port	I-14
	Removing Ports from the Hunt Group	I-14
	Removing Voice Ports	I-16
<b>J</b>	<b>Analog Port Administration</b>	<b>J-1</b>
	■ G3r/R5r	J-2
	Task J-1: Identifying the Circuit Pack — Analog Emulation	J-2
	Task J-2: Assigning the User Defined Adjunct Names	J-3
	Task J-3: Administering the Voice Ports as Stations	J-3
	3A: Completing the Station Screen	J-4
	3B: Duplicating the Station	J-7
	Task J-4: Assigning the Hunt Group	J-7
<b>AB</b>	<b>Abbreviations</b>	<b>AB-1</b>
<b>GL</b>	<b>Glossary</b>	<b>GL-1</b>
<b>IN</b>	<b>Index</b>	<b>IN-1</b>

# About This Document

---

## Overview

---

This document describes the following procedures:

- Installation of DEFINITY® AUDIX® Voice Messaging System release 4, version 0 (4.0)
- Administration of a DEFINITY switch to make DEFINITY AUDIX service available
- Initial administration of DEFINITY AUDIX
- Acceptance testing procedures for the hardware and software comprising the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
- Procedures for migrating from a previous release of DEFINITY AUDIX to release 4.0.

The procedures are described in the form of specific tasks that should be completed in sequence.

---

## Intended Audiences

---

This document is intended for the following audiences:

- Personnel responsible for installing the DEFINITY AUDIX System hardware
- Software Specialists (SS), Software Associates (SA), and other personnel (such as factory personnel and customers) responsible for performing initial administration of DEFINITY AUDIX and cut-to-service procedures
- Lucent Technologies customers who must administer a switch to work with the DEFINITY AUDIX system
- Lucent Technologies and Lucent-certified service personnel who must administer and maintain a DEFINITY AUDIX system and the switch that supports it
- Field support and the remote service center personnel

## Prerequisite Skills and Knowledge

The information in this document assumes no prerequisite training. However, DEFINITY AUDIX system installation or upgrade training is recommended. To install this product, an installer should have basic knowledge of the switch, DEFINITY AUDIX, fault isolation, the customer's application, and toll fraud protection.

## Trademarks and Service Marks

The following trademarks are mentioned throughout this document:

Product Name	Company
AT™	Trademark of Hayes Microcomputer Products, Inc.
AUDIX®	Registered trademark of Lucent Technologies
DEFINITY®	Registered trademark of Lucent Technologies
INTUITY™	Registered trademark of Lucent Technologies
ProLogix™	Registered trademark of Lucent Technologies
U.S. Robotics®	Registered trademark of 3Com Corporation
Sportster®	Registered trademark of 3Com Corporation

## Organization of This Document

This document is organized as follows:

- [Chapter 1, "Prerequisites"](#), identifies site requirements, required tools, safety considerations, and supported configurations.
- [Chapter 2, "Hardware Installation"](#), describes the tasks required for installing the DEFINITY AUDIX system hardware and the associated peripherals.
- [Chapter 3, "Definity AUDIX Option Administration"](#) describes the initial setup of customer and server options on the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
- [Chapter 4, "Initial Switch Administration: G3r/R5r"](#), describes the initial tasks required to administer the Definity Audix voice ports on the switch.
- [Chapter 6, "Optional Switch Feature Administration"](#), describes the tasks required to administer optional Definity Audix features on the switch.
- [Chapter 5, "Initial Definity AUDIX Administration"](#), describes the tasks required for initial administration of the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
- [Chapter 7, "Joint Acceptance Testing"](#), describes the tasks required to verify the DEFINITY AUDIX system installation and operation.

- [Chapter 8, "Initial Subscriber Administration"](#), describes how to add the initial set of subscribers to the DEFINITY AUDIX system database.
- [Chapter 9, "Final Switch Administration: G3r/R5r"](#), describes the tasks required to add the initial set of DEFINITY AUDIX subscribers to the switch.
- [Chapter 10, "Customer Acceptance"](#), describes the tasks that the Project Manager should complete with the customer to ensure the DEFINITY AUDIX system is fully functional.
- [Appendix A, "Switch Carrier Configuration Worksheets"](#) includes the worksheets for selecting the appropriate slots for the DEFINITY AUDIX system within any allowed switch carrier.
- [Appendix B, "Switch Administration Worksheets"](#) includes the worksheets required to complete the initial switch administration.
- [Appendix C, "DEFINITY AUDIX System Administration Worksheets"](#) includes the worksheets for completing the initial DEFINITY AUDIX administration.
- [Appendix D, "Optional Features Worksheets"](#) includes the worksheets for administering optional features on the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
- [Appendix E, "Terminal Configuration"](#) includes the worksheet for configuring the DEFINITY AUDIX administration terminal.
- [Appendix F, "Migration Procedure"](#) describes the procedure for migrating from a previous version of DEFINITY AUDIX to version 4.0.
- [Appendix G, "Announcement Set Considerations and Installation"](#), describes how to customize announcement and fragment sets, and add new language sets.
- [Appendix H, "Terminal and Modem Settings"](#), contains a list of option settings for supported terminals and modems. However, this appendix does not provide procedures for setting the options. Refer to the appropriate manual supplied with the terminal and modem for these procedures.
- [Appendix I, "Changing Switch Integrations, Port Emulations, and Number of Voice Ports"](#), describes the tasks required to change several configuration parameters of the switch administration of the Definity Audix system.
- [Appendix J, "Analog Port Administration"](#), describes the tasks required to administer analog port emulation.

A list of abbreviations, a glossary, and an index are also provided.

## How to Use This Document

---

Those who install and upgrade hardware and software on DEFINITY AUDIX systems should reference the tasks within the entire document, including the appendices. [Appendix A](#) through [Appendix E](#) include worksheets that must be completed before starting the installation.

Field Support, Remote Service Center (TSC, ITAC, CDEs, and distributors), and factory personnel should read the entire document to gain a thorough overview of the DEFINITY AUDIX system installation procedures.

## Conventions Used in This Document

---

The following typographic conventions are used in this document:

- Keyboard keys that you press are shown in rounded boxes. For example, an instruction to press the carriage return or equivalent key is shown in this document as:

Press **ENTER**.

- The word *enter* means to type a value or command and then press the **ENTER** key. For example, an instruction to type **y** and press **ENTER** is shown in this document as:

Enter **y** to continue.

### NOTE:

To send the information to the DEFINITY AUDIX system, the **RETURN** key (located on the right side of your keyboard) must be pressed after you type a command or a response to a prompt. On some keyboards, this key is labeled **ENTER** instead of **RETURN**.

If your keyboard has *both* a **RETURN** key and an **ENTER** key (as on the 513 and 615 keyboards), use the **RETURN** key.

- Two or three keys that you press at the same time (that is, you hold down the first key while pressing the second key and, if appropriate, the third key as well) are shown in rounded boxes separated by hyphens. For example, an instruction to press and hold **CONTROL** while typing the letter **d** is shown in this document as:

Press **CONTROL** -**D**.

- Information that is displayed on your terminal screen — including screen displays, field names, prompts, and error messages — is shown in typewriter-style constant-width type. Information that you enter from your keyboard is shown in constant-width bold type. Here is an example:

At the login: prompt, enter **auditx**

- Variables whose values are supplied by you or the system are shown in italic type. For example, an error message that is displayed on the screen with one of your specific filenames might be shown generically in this document as:

The filesystem *filename* is out of space.

## Related Resources

---

Refer to the Lucent Technologies Business Communications Systems Publications Catalog on the World Wide Web at the following address for a current list of DEFINITY AUDIX and switch documentation:

**<http://www.lucent.com/enterprise/documentation/>**

The following documents are related to DEFINITY AUDIX system installation and upgrades.

- For all DEFINITY AUDIX system planning information, see *Planning for DEFINITY AUDIX System*, 585-300-602.
- For complete instructions on administering Digital Networking, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Digital Networking*, 585-300-534.
- For information about earlier versions of the system, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Documentation Guide*, 585-300-011. This book lists currently available editions of books covering the earlier systems as well as version 4.0.
- For complete details on ongoing administration of a DEFINITY AUDIX system, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration*, 585-300-507.
- For complete details on the DEFINITY AUDIX system, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — System Description*, 585-300-214.
- For all maintenance procedures, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121.
- For installation and operation information on the G3-MA (SAT-PC), see *DEFINITY Communications System Generic 3 Management Applications Station Provisioning*, 555-229-202.
- For installation and operation information on INTUITY Message Manager, see *INTUITY Message Manager User Guide*, 585-310-725.

To order additional Lucent Technologies documents from within the USA, call the Lucent Technologies Customer Information Center, 1-800-432-6600, and request each item by the appropriate document number.

## How to Get Help

---

If problems arise during installation of the DEFINITY AUDIX System that cannot be resolved locally, call the appropriate remote service center. The number will be provided to you by the Project Manager overseeing this installation.

## How to Make Comments About This Document

---

The reader comment card is located after the title page. While we have tried to make this document fit your needs, we are interested in your suggestions for improving it and urge you to fill one out.

If the reader comment card has been removed from this document, please send your comments to:

Lucent Technologies  
Product Documentation  
Room 22-2X57  
11900 North Pecos Street  
Denver, Colorado 80234

Send e-mail comments to:

[octeltechpubs@lucent.com](mailto:octeltechpubs@lucent.com)

## Prerequisites

# 1

---

This chapter describes prerequisites for installing a DEFINITY AUDIX system. These include:

[Task 1-1 - "Verify the Selected Site"](#).

[Task 1-2 - "Gather the Required Tools"](#)

[Task 1-3 - "Review Safety Considerations"](#)

[Task 1-4 - "Verify the Components and Connectivity"](#)

[Task 1-5 - "Complete the Worksheets"](#)

Before beginning the installation, make sure you complete these prerequisites.

**⇒ NOTE:**

If this Installation or Migration includes Digital Networking, ensure that the Installation Specification is completed and available.

**⇒ NOTE:**

The installation of INTUITY™ Message Manager requires that the following information be obtained from the LAN Administrator. This information is required for administration of the DEFINITY AUDIX Server:

Gateway Address  
Subnet Mask  
IP Address  
Link Integrity of the LAN

## Display Set and Control-Link Integration

---

The Definity Audix system can be connected to the switch in one of two ways: display set (DS) or control-link (CL) integration. CL integration requires an external connection from the switch to an RS-232C port (Port B) on the TN568

## 1 Prerequisites

### Verify the Selected Site

1-2

circuit card of the Definity Audix system. DS integration uses a channel internal to the switch that would otherwise be used to transfer display-set information. You need to know which integration type - DS or CL - to set up for this installation. If you do not know the integration, contact the project manager or the remote support center before proceeding.

## **Task 1-1: Verify the Selected Site**

---

Defining and ensuring that the site meets the DEFINITY AUDIX system requirements is the responsibility of the Project Manager and the customer, and must be *completed before* you install the DEFINITY AUDIX system. The guidelines are listed here so that you are aware of these requirements.

Verify that the site selected for the switch and the DEFINITY AUDIX system provides the following:

- For a DEFINITY AUDIX system installed in an existing switch, two contiguous slots in a switch carrier to house the DEFINITY AUDIX system. If your switch carrier is a CMC however, the system only requires one slot if you install it in slot 6. (see [Appendix A](#) for details on configuring the port slots on the switch.)
- Easy access for cabling
- Adequate work space for the system administrator and operators
- A temperature range of 65° F to 85° F (18° C to 29° C)
- A humidity range of 20 to 60%, non-condensing.
- The site must be secure and provide protection from excessive sunlight, heat, cold, chemicals, static electricity, magnetic fields, vibration, and particulate matter.

## **Task 1-2: Gather the Required Tools**

---

To install an DEFINITY AUDIX system, you must have the following tools:

- No. 1 or No. 2 Phillips screwdriver
- Narrow width, flat blade screwdriver
- 1/4-inch nut driver (recommended)
- Antistatic grounded wrist strap

## Task 1-3: Review Safety Considerations

---



### **WARNING:**

*Electronic equipment can be damaged by electrostatic discharge. Observe proper electrostatic discharge precautions when handling computer components, in particular, circuit cards, disk drives, and the system board. Wear a ground wrist strap on your bare skin and connect the strap to ground.*



### **DANGER:**

*Do not touch the switch backplane while installing the DEFINITY AUDIX system. The backplane contains dangerous voltages and currents.*

To prevent damage to the equipment and yourself, adhere to the following:

- Make sure you are familiar with the procedures necessary to prevent electrostatic damage to the equipment.
- Properly ground a wrist strap.
- Place the grounded wrist strap on your bare wrist. The wrist strap must contact your bare skin directly. Do *not* wear it over your clothes.
- Do not remove the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly from the polyethylene bag until:
  - Your wrist strap is on your wrist and properly grounded.
  - You have made room in the switch carrier and you are ready to insert the DEFINITY AUDIX System assembly in the carrier.
- If you need to work on the DEFINITY AUDIX System assembly — that is, disassemble it — place the assembly on a grounded antistatic work mat.

## Task 1-4: Verify the Components and Connectivity

---

Review the connectivity diagrams in [Figure 1-1](#) and [Figure 1-2](#) to gain a general understanding of how to connect the DEFINITY AUDIX system. With DS integration, Port B is available to connect a second terminal.

In these drawings, optional connection methods are shown in braces. The optional connections are illustrated in diagrams presented later in the chapter. For example, the options for terminal connections are listed in braces in [Figure 1-1](#). These connections are explained in [Task 2-3](#) on [page 2-13](#). Refer to these diagrams for details on the various connections.

1 Prerequisites

Verify the Components and Connectivity

1-4

Compare the diagrams corresponding to your particular application with the actual parts you received to make sure you have all the required parts. In addition to the components illustrated in the diagrams, you can connect most terminals, modems, and printers.

If you do not have all the required parts, follow your normal procedure with the factory to acquire the missing parts. After you have reviewed the connectivity diagram and have verified the DEFINITY AUDIX system components, proceed to the tasks in [Chapter 2, "Hardware Installation"](#).

**NOTE:**

If DEFINITY AUDIX will be used as a server for local area network (LAN) applications such as INTUITY Message Manager, we recommend that you install the LAN connecting block (see ["Alarm Connection Via an External Modem"](#) on [page 2-10](#)) before installing DEFINITY AUDIX.

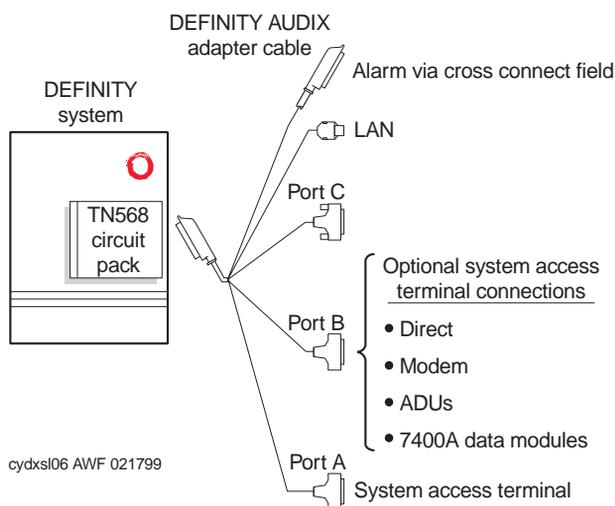


Figure 1-1. DEFINITY AUDIX System Connectivity Diagram - DS Integration

1 Prerequisites

Verify the Components and Connectivity

1-5

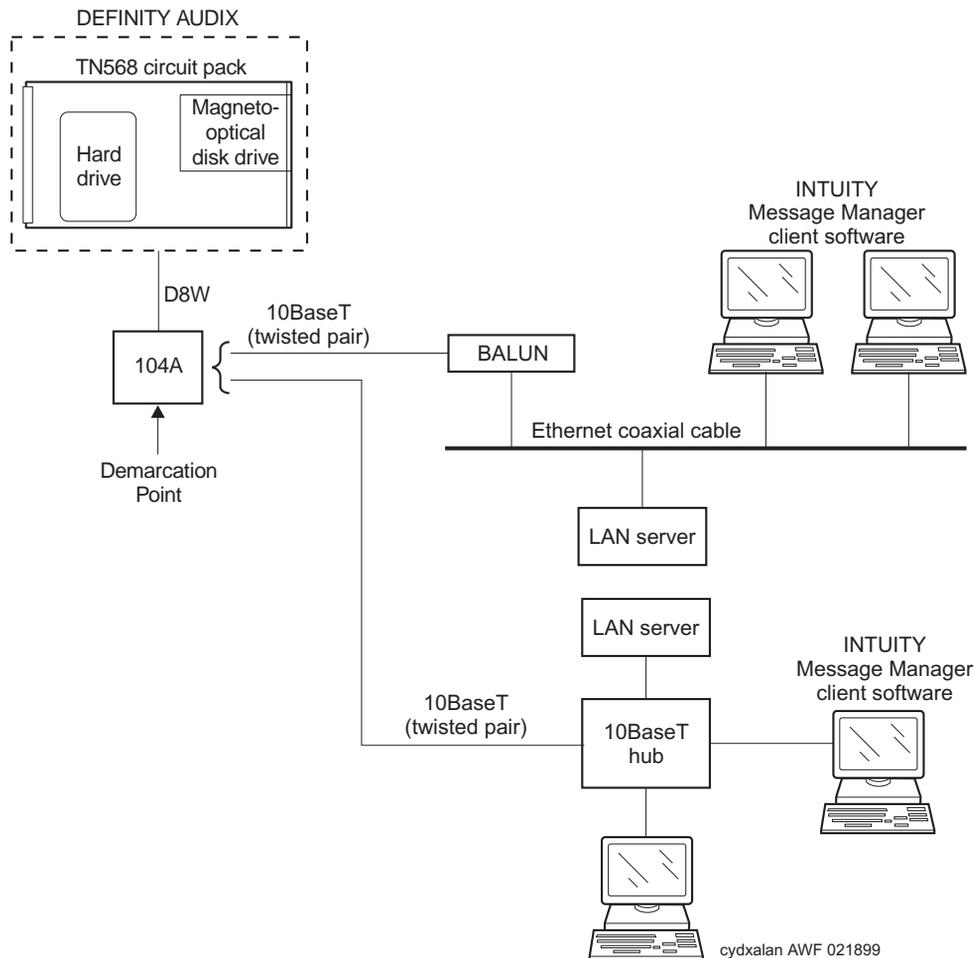


Figure 1-2. DEFINITY AUDIX LAN Connectivity

⇒ NOTE:

If DEFINITY AUDIX is to be used as a server for LAN applications such as INTUITY Message Manager, Lucent must install a connecting block for the LAN within 25 feet of the switch. The customer is responsible for the connection between the LAN and the connecting block.

[Figure 1-2](#) shows two possible ways of connecting the DEFINITY AUDIX system to a LAN. For both choices, the RJ45 connector on the system adaptor cable connects to a 10BaseT LAN system. Further details are provided in [“LAN Connection”](#) on [page 2-10](#).

1 Prerequisites

*Complete the Worksheets*

1-6

## **Task 1-5: Complete the Worksheets**

Before starting the installation process, the Program Manager, Software Specialist, Software Associate, or installing technician must complete the relevant worksheets in [Appendix A](#) through [Appendix E](#). These worksheets include installation variables that are critical to the success of this process.

# Hardware Installation

# 2

---

This chapter describes the tasks required to install the DEFINITY AUDIX system and peripheral hardware.

You can install the DEFINITY AUDIX system in any of the following switches.

- G3r [V1-V4, R5 or greater]

The DEFINITY AUDIX system installation tasks are virtually the same for all switch types. Therefore only one set of tasks is provided. These installation tasks include:

[Task 2-1 - "Install the DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly"](#)

[Task 2-2 - "Connect to the System Adaptor Cable"](#)

[Task 2-3 - "Install the Terminals"](#)

[Task 2-4 - "Install the Printer \(Optional\)"](#)

[Task 2-5 - "Finalize and Test the Hardware"](#)

## Worksheets Needed

---

Before beginning these tasks, make sure you have completed the following worksheets.

- [Worksheet A-1: Port Slot Assignments \(Before Carrier Rearrangement\)](#)
- [Worksheet A-2: Port Slot Assignments \(For Carrier Rearrangement\)](#)
- [Worksheet A-3: Slot Locations for the DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly](#)
- [Worksheet C-2: Activate IMAPI for the AUDIX Server Hardware \(LAN\) Options](#)
- [Worksheet C-9: Set Up Alarm Origination](#)
- [Worksheet E-1: Terminals](#)

 NOTE:

The worksheets are included in appendices A-E. Refer to the appendix corresponding to the worksheet letter. For example, worksheet A-1 is in appendix A, worksheet C-10 is in appendix C, etc.

## Task 2-1: Install the DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly

---

 WARNING:

To prevent damage to the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly, make sure that you have connected the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly adapter cable to the port connector on the back of the switch (as described in [Step 4](#) of the installation steps below) before you insert the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly in the switch carrier.

 NOTE:

If you are installing the system in a new switch purchased with Definity Audix, the adaptor cables will already be installed.

 WARNING:

You can install the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly in the switch when the switch is powered either on or off. When the assembly is inserted in the switch carrier, it automatically powers up, runs diagnostics, and boots. To avoid a hard disk crash, never remove the assembly without first completing the procedure to shut down the DEFINITY AUDIX system and allowing the hard disk to completely spin down.

For the same reason, do not power cycle the switch (for example, during switch acceptance tests) once the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly is inserted until you have shut down the DEFINITY AUDIX system. Refer to Chapter 1 in DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance, 585-300-121, for the shutdown procedure.

2 Hardware Installation

Install the DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly

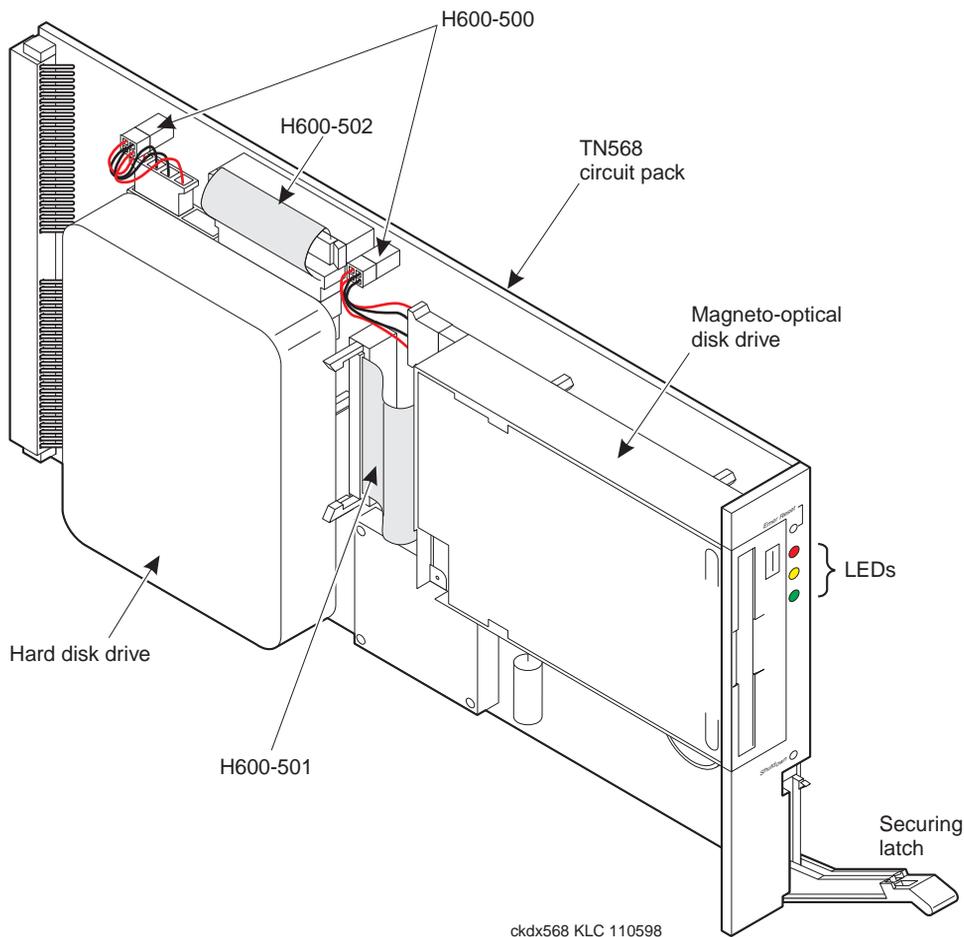


Figure 2-1. DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly

## Slot and Carrier Restrictions

---

If you must rearrange circuit packs in the switch to accommodate the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly, rearrange the packs as indicated on [Worksheet A-2](#) before proceeding.

Do not use slot 14 (or slot 13 in an EPN control cabinet) for the DEFINITY AUDIX system if you are installing the system in a System 75 XE or in a single-carrier cabinet of a DEFINITY G1, G3i, G3r, or G3s.

See the worksheets in [Appendix A, "Switch Carrier Configuration Worksheets"](#), for detailed information on rearranging circuit packs and on slot restrictions.

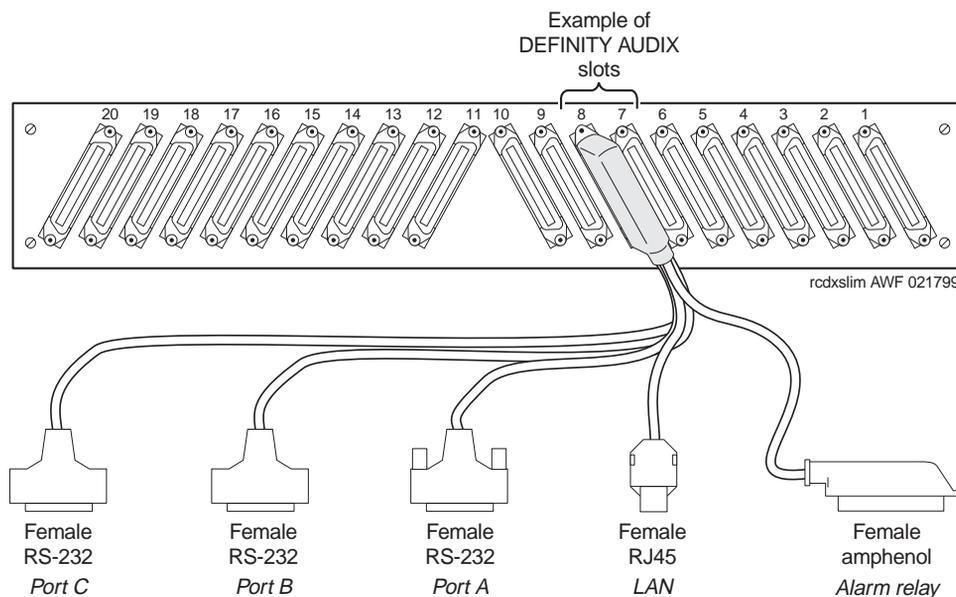
## DEFINITY AUDIX System Slots

---

The DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly requires two contiguous port slots in the switch carrier. In this task, the two slots are referred to as the first and second slot, with the understanding that they can be any two contiguous port slots.

The slots are numbered from left to right on the front panel of the switch cabinet, and from right to left on the rear panel, as shown in [Figure 2-2](#). Facing the front panel, the two port slots are occupied by the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly as follows:

- The first (left) slot is occupied by the DEFINITY AUDIX hard disk drive and magneto-optical (MO) disk drive and does not connect to the backplane of the switch.
- The second (right) slot connects the DEFINITY AUDIX TN568 circuit pack to the backplane of the switch. This is the slot you will connect to the adaptor cable.



**Figure 2-2. Connecting the Adapter Cable, Rear-Panel View**

If the DEFINITY AUDIX system was shipped in a new switch, verify that the adapter cable is installed. If so, skip to Step [7](#) of this task.



**NOTE:**

If Definity Audix is already installed in the switch, the system will boot up when the switch is turned on.

## Installation Steps

Using [Worksheet A-3](#), follow the steps below to install the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly.

1. Wear a ground wrist strap on your bare skin and connect to a ground when handling circuit cards, disk drives, and the system board. Refer to [Task 1-3](#) for complete instructions.
2. Remove the amphenol connector, if any, from the second slot of the two contiguous slots reserved for the DEFINITY AUDIX system. For example, if you install the DEFINITY AUDIX system in slots 7 and 8 of carrier A in the switch, remove the amphenol connector on the Group 300 cables from slot 8. This slot provides connectivity to the DEFINITY AUDIX system circuit pack.
3. Dress down the cable you removed.

## 2 Hardware Installation

### Install the DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly

2-6

4. Referring to [Figure 2-2](#), attach the male D-type amphenol connector of the DEFINITY AUDIX system adapter cable to the circuit card slot, that is, the second slot of the two DEFINITY AUDIX system slots.



#### **CAUTION:**

*You must connect the adaptor cable directly to the port connector on the switch. If you install another cable between the switch and the cables, the DEFINITY AUDIX system will not operate correctly.*

If you are installing the DEFINITY AUDIX system in a DC-powered switch, perform [Step 5](#) to install the opto-isolators. Refer to [Figure 2-7](#) for details. Otherwise, skip to [Step 6](#).

5. Install the 116A opto-isolators.
  - a. Attach the male end of a null modem cable (supplied with the DEFINITY AUDIX system) to the RS-232C connector labeled PORT A. Attach the male connector of the 116A opto-isolator to the other end of the null modem cable.

If you are installing a second terminal, connect the second opto-isolator following the procedure below. Otherwise, skip to [Step 6](#).

- b. Attach the male end of another null modem cable to the RS-232C connector labeled *PORT B* on the system cable. Attach the male connector of the second 116A opto-isolator to the other end of the null modem cable.

2 Hardware Installation

Install the DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly

2-7

6. Insert the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly (see [Figure 2-1](#)) into the switch cabinet. To do so, hold the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly by the outside edge of the faceplate and line up the TN568 circuit pack with the bottom guide of the second slot of the two reserved port slots in the switch carrier. Make sure that the assembly is properly aligned in the slot, then insert it with a single firm push, and lock it in place by pushing up the securing latch on the circuit pack.



**WARNING:**

*If the switch is powered on, the DEFINITY AUDIX system automatically boots up when seated in the slot. Damage to the hard disk could occur if the assembly is removed while booting. Therefore, do not adjust or reinsert the assembly.*

If the switch is not powered on, wait until it is and then proceed to [Step 7](#).

7. As the DEFINITY AUDIX system boots up, watch the three LEDs on the faceplate (see [Figure 2-3](#)).

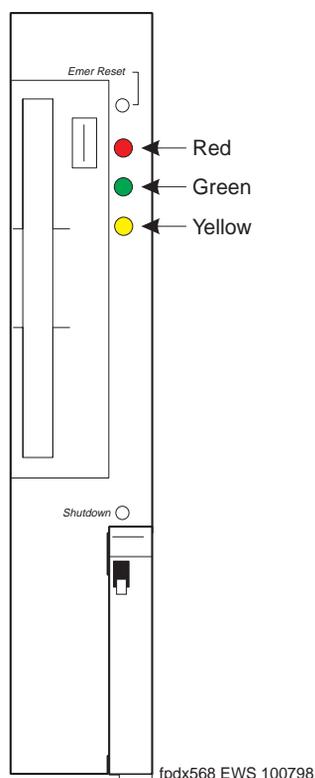


Figure 2-3. DEFINITY AUDIX System LED Display

The combined states of the LEDs listed in [Table 2-1](#) indicate the current status of the system, including minor and major alarms. When the DEFINITY AUDIX SYSTEM boots up, the LED states should match the boot up sequence shown in the following table:

**Table 2-1. LED States During Normal Boot Up Sequence**

Red (failure)	Green (maintenance)	Yellow (system)	System Status
On	On	On	Board inserted, main CPU is not running (for a very short time <sup>1</sup> )
On	On	Flashing	Firmware running diagnostic re-boot
Any value	On	Off	Booting software (for a short time <sup>1</sup> )
Any value	Off	Flashing	UNIX is running (for a short time <sup>1</sup> )
Any value	Off	On	AUDIX state

1. The time is the period that the LED lights are displayed.

See *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121 for a complete list of the status and alarm states.

If the DEFINITY AUDIX system does not come up to the AUDIX state within 10 minutes, write down the states displayed on the LEDs, and refer to the associated troubleshooting procedures in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121.

 **NOTE:**

If the system passes through the normal AUDIX state (Red - off, Green - off, Yellow - on) but ends with the following state:

Red - on, Green - off, Yellow - on

you can ignore it at this time. This is an alarm state indicating a software error that probably resulted from a port board alarm. The alarm should turn off when you administer the ports.

8. Continue with [Task 2-2](#).

## Task 2-2: Connect to the System Adaptor Cable

---

The system adapter cable has five connectors available for outside connections ([Figure 2-2](#)):

- Female amphenol connector: Alarm Origination/Remote Maintenance Access
- RJ45: Local Area Network (LAN) used for INTUITY™ Message Manager (IMM)
- Female RS-232: Port A: Main Terminal
- Female RS-232: Port B - Control Link or Auxiliary Terminal
- Female RS-232: Port C - External Modem

Refer to [Figure 1-1 on page 1-4](#) for an overview of these connections.

### Alarm Origination/Remote Access Connection

The DEFINITY AUDIX system can be connected to a remote location through a remote access connection. This connection can be used to transmit alarms and perform remote maintenance. For instance, when the DEFINITY AUDIX system detects a major malfunction, it closes an alarm relay and can transmit the alarm condition to a remote service center. Technicians at the remote location can then connect to the DEFINITY AUDIX through the modem connection and perform diagnostics to troubleshoot the malfunction.

A remote access alarm notification can be set up in one or both of the following configurations:

- Through an external modem (Port C)
- Through the alarm relay via the cross-connect field (female amphenol)

If Port C is connected to a modem, and the alarm relay connected to the switch via the cross-connect field, the remote service center will receive redundant alarms from both the modem and the switch. Alternatively, you can configure the cross-connect field to activate a local alarm device, such as a warning light or buzzer, instead of sending the alarm to a remote location. When this configuration is combined with a remote connection via the modem, the system can alert both the local administrator and the remote service center.



**CAUTION:**

*Do not connect the alarm relay to any warning device that requires more than the following:*

- 1 Amp
- 220 V DC
- 250V AC
- 30W
- 62.5 VA

Refer to [Worksheet C-9](#) to determine which connection to install. Complete one or both of the procedures below.



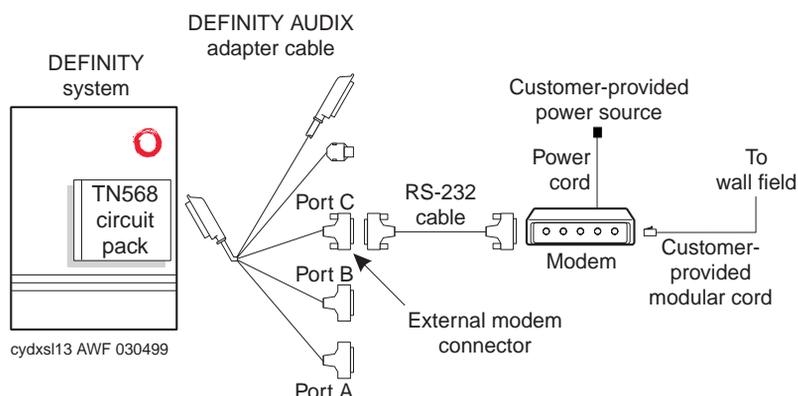
**NOTE:**

The following alarm options are activated on the DEFINITY AUDIX system in [Task 10-1](#) in [Chapter 10](#).

### Alarm Connection Via an External Modem

To connect the DEFINITY AUDIX system to an external modem:

1. Connect the modem to Port C as shown in [Figure 2-4](#).



**Figure 2-4. Installing the External Modem**



**CAUTION:**

*If the DEFINITY AUDIX system is installed in a DC-powered switch, you must use a ground-isolated modem.*

2. Plug the modem power cord into a wall outlet and power on the modem.

2 Hardware Installation

Connect to the System Adaptor Cable

2-11

3. Set the modem options. Refer to [“Modem Option Settings \(for Port C Modems\)”](#) in [Appendix H](#) for a complete list of option settings for all supported modems.

### Alarm Connection Via the Alarm Relay

To connect the Definity Audix alarm relay to an alarm device:

1. Connect the DEFINITY AUDIX system cable to the cross-connect field.  
 Attach the male amphenol connector on a Group 300 cable to the female amphenol connector on the system cable. The other end of the Group 300 cable should already be attached to the cross-connect field.
2. Perform the cross-connects for the alarm origination/remote maintenance access connection using the pin-outs listed below.

Pin	Definition
22	relay contact
47	relay contact

3. Connect the alarm device to the cross-connect field.

You can connect the switch alarm to the DEFINITY AUDIX alarm relay or to a different device such as a warning light or buzzer.

### LAN Connection

If DEFINITY AUDIX is equipped with LAN connectivity, see [Worksheet C-2](#) to configure the LAN connection. If you are not installing a LAN connection, proceed to [Task 2-3](#).



**CAUTION:**

*The LAN connection is only intended for use within a building. To protect the system from lightning or other external disturbances, a router or LAN device that provides voltage suppression should be used.*

The 104A connecting block is the demarcation point between DEFINITY AUDIX and the customer-provided LAN. Lucent is responsible for installing the connecting block and for connecting it to the DEFINITY AUDIX system. The customer is responsible for connecting the 104A connecting block to the LAN.

Mount the 104A connecting block to the wall field within 25 feet of the switch, and hard connect eight wires across its two wiring blocks as described below.

1. Arrange the ends of these eight wires into the connecting blocks ([Figure 2-5](#)).

2 Hardware Installation

Connect to the System Adaptor Cable

2-12

2. Snap four protector caps over the top. This presses the wire into the connector.

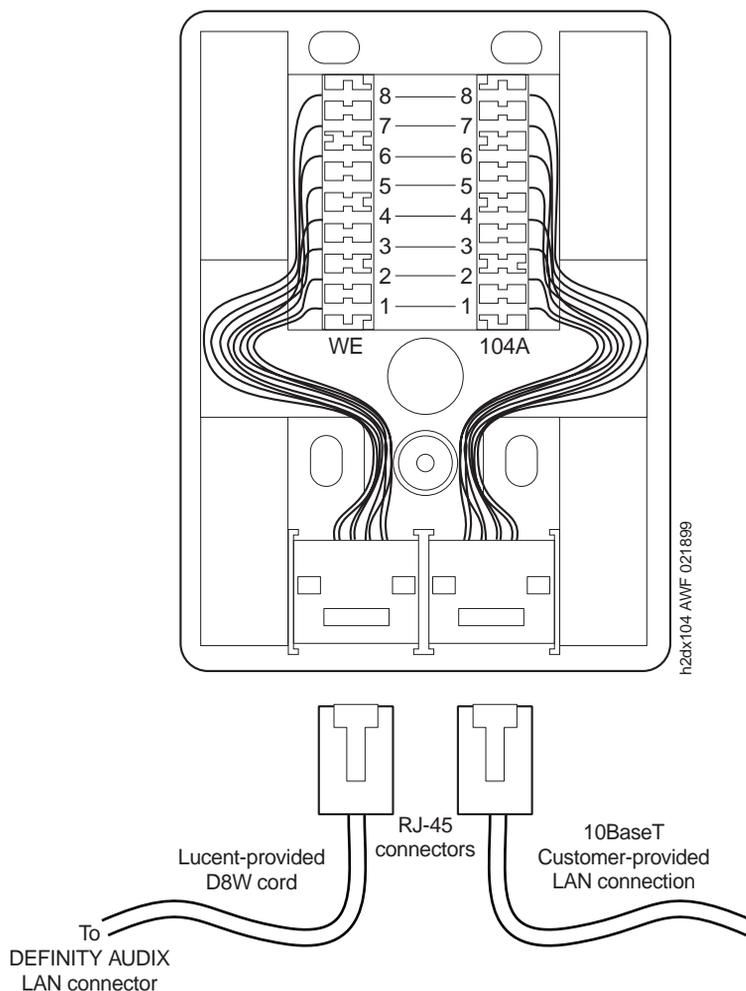


Figure 2-5. 104A Connecting Block

3. Use a D8W modular wall cord (up to 25 feet long) to connect the RJ45 connector from the DEFINITY AUDIX system to the 104A connecting block. Make this connection whether or not you activate INTUITY Message Manager right away.

If the customer intends to connect a LAN to the DEFINITY AUDIX system, the customer must supply a 10BaseT twisted pair cable with a male RJ-45 connector. The customer is responsible for connecting this cable to the 104A connecting block and to the LAN.

The IMAPI feature for INTUITY Message Manager is activated later on in this manual using the administration terminal.

## Port Connections for DS Integration

The Definity Audix system cable has three female RS-232C connectors labeled Port A, Port B, and Port C.

When using DS integration, both Port A and Port B can be connected to a system-access terminal either locally (directly) or remotely. The primary system-access terminal should be connected to Port A. The only difference between Port A and Port B is that some system diagnostic messages, created only when the system is booting, are sent to Port A but not to Port B. These messages do not appear during normal operation.

Continue with [Task 2-3](#).

## Task 2-3: Install the Terminals

You will install one or two system-access terminals to perform administration and maintenance operations. The main terminal must be connected to Port A, since this port allows access to firmware diagnostics. If the DEFINITY AUDIX system is integrated via DS integration, you can also connect an auxiliary terminal to Port B. You can perform all the administration tasks from his terminal, although you cannot perform firmware diagnostics.

If the terminal is connected via a modem, you can also dial in to the remote maintenance modem on Port C. This connection is preferred for remote maintenance operations since you can perform firmware diagnostics and reboot the system from Port C without losing the modem connection.

Select one of the following subtasks to connect a system-access terminal to Port A, and, if desired, to connect a second terminal to Port B. Use [Worksheet E-1](#) to determine which task to complete.

- [Installing a Terminal via Direct Connection](#)
- [Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via Modem](#)
- [Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via Asynchronous Data Units \(ADUs\)](#)
- [Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via 7400A Data Modules](#)

The procedure for connecting a terminal to the DEFINITY AUDIX system is the same for all supported terminals with a few exceptions identified in this book. See the *DEFINITY AUDIX System — System Description*, 585-300-205, for a list of the supported terminals and modems.

If you are connecting a PC using G3-MA or DNA software as a DEFINITY AUDIX system administration and maintenance terminal, see DEFINITY Communications System Generic 3 Management Applications Station Provisioning, 555-229-202 for installation instructions.

Keep in mind that the DEFINITY AUDIX system is data terminal equipment (DTE), and that a null modem must be installed whenever you connect the system to other DTE hardware. If you are connecting DEFINITY AUDIX to data communications equipment (DCE), use a straight RS-232 connection.

The following table lists the equipment type for hardware typically associated with DEFINITY AUDIX. Use this table to determine the type of connection you need.

**Table 2-2. Equipment Type for Typical Hardware**

Data Terminal Equipment (null modem required)	Data Communication Equipment (direct connection)
DEFINITY AUDIX system	DEFINITY switch DCE connector
PCs	modems
Serial Printers	data modules
Terminals <sup>1</sup>	

1. Some terminals include DCE ports or DTE to DCE adaptors. Refer to the manual for your terminal to determine the proper connection.

Note that you need to install a null modem between DEFINITY AUDIX and the PC to complete the DTE/DCE pair when connecting the PC, which is a DTE.

The descriptions of [Task 2-3B](#), [Task 2-3C](#), and [Task 2-3D](#) assume that a remote terminal is being connected to Port B. These tasks can also be used for a remote connection to Port A by substituting A for B in the descriptions.

### Task 2-3A: Installing a Terminal via Direct Connection

Refer to [Figure 2-6](#) for systems installed in AC-powered switches, and to [Figure 2-7](#) for systems installed in DC-powered switches.

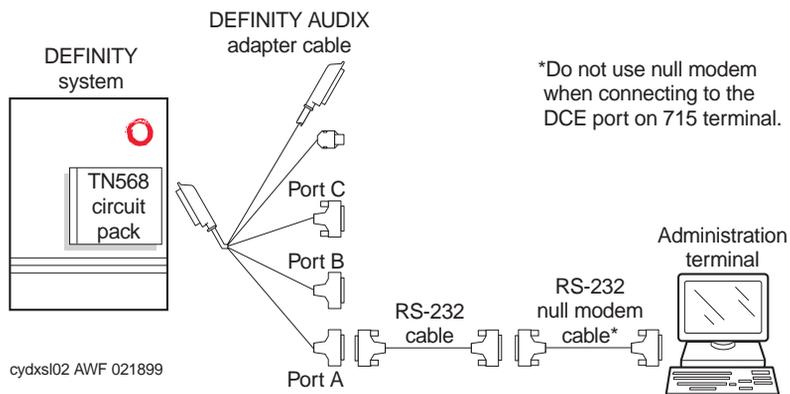


Figure 2-6. Installing a Terminal via Direct Connection (AC Switch only)

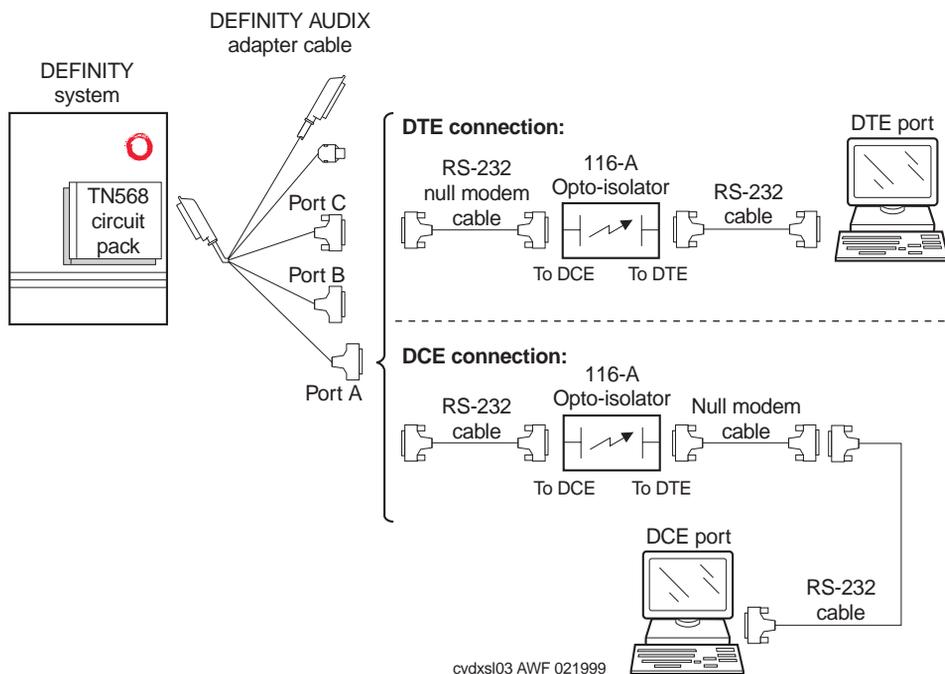


Figure 2-7. Installing a Terminal via Direct Connection (DC Switch Only)

1. If you are installing a new terminal, unpack it according to the instructions supplied with the terminal.

2. Place the terminal on a suitable table within cabling distance of the switch cabinet.
3. Connect the keyboard.
4. If you did not connect an opto-isolator to either PORT A or PORT B, connect the terminal as shown in [Figure 2-6](#).
5. If you did connect an opto-isolator to the PORT A or PORT B connectors on the system cable (in [Task 2-1](#)), connect the equipment as shown in [Figure 2-7](#).



**NOTE:**

For a DCE terminal connection, attach a null modem cable between the opto-isolator and the RS-232 cable as shown in [Figure 2-7](#).

For a 715 terminal, attach the RS-232 cable to the DCE connector on the back of the terminal.

6. Plug the terminal power cord into a wall outlet and power on the terminal.
7. Set the terminal options. See [Appendix H](#), for a list of important option settings for supported terminals.

If the terminal is installed correctly and the DEFINITY AUDIX system is in the AUDIX state, the terminal displays the login prompt.

If the terminal does not display the login prompt when the DEFINITY AUDIX system is in the audix state, press **(RETURN)** a few times. If the login prompt still does not appear, refer to the troubleshooting procedures for terminal connections in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121.

8. Continue with [Task 2-4](#).

### Task 2-3B: Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via Modem

This task describes how to connect a remote terminal via a modem to Port B, although the same procedure can be used to connect the terminal to Port A or Port C. Note that you can not connect an additional terminal to Port B if installing a control link (CL). Refer to ["Port Connections for DS Integration"](#) on [page 2-13](#) for a discussion of proper port connections.

Note the following limitations when deciding which port to connect to:

- Port A is the primary administration terminal. Users can perform firmware diagnostics from Port A, although the modem connection drops when the system is rebooted.

- Port B is the auxiliary terminal connection and can only be used with display set integration. This connection is only for system administration. Users can not perform firmware diagnostics and therefore can not do many maintenance tasks.
- Port C is the remote maintenance terminal connection. From Port C you can perform any maintenance task, and can reboot the system without losing the modem connection.

To ensure the modems you are installing are supported for DEFINITY AUDIX installation, refer to [Table H-6](#) in [Appendix H](#) for a complete list of required modem features.

**CAUTION:**  
 If the DEFINITY AUDIX system is installed in a DC-powered switch, you must use a ground-isolated modem.

Refer to [Figure 2-8](#) when performing this task.

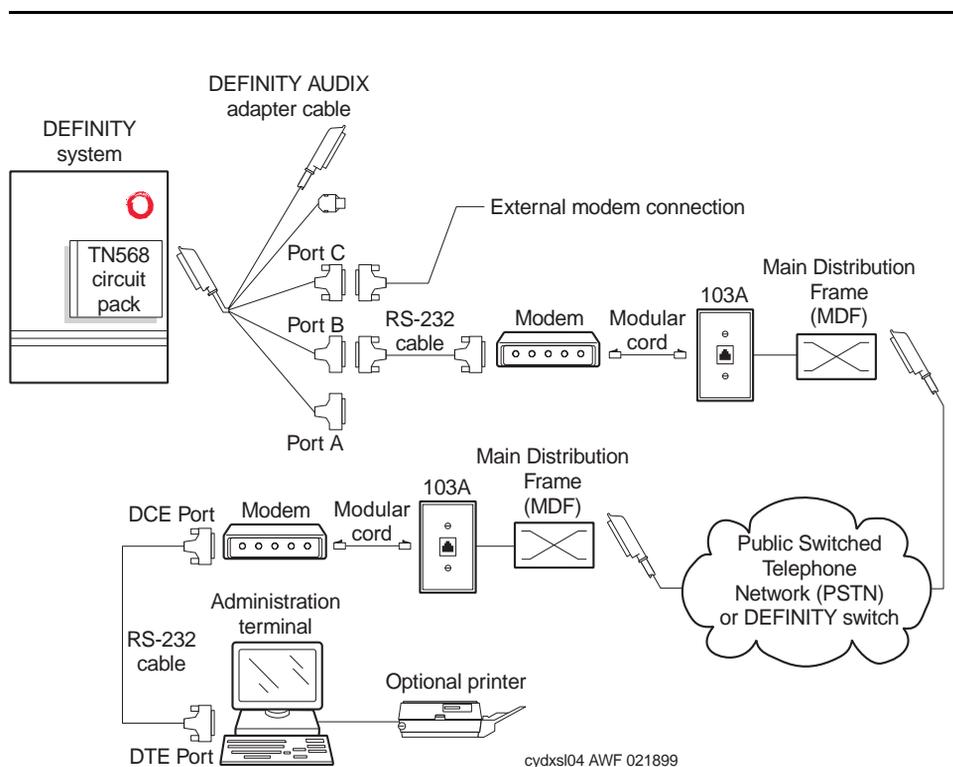


Figure 2-8. Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via Modem

1. In the room where the switch and DEFINITY AUDIX system are located, place one modem between the DEFINITY AUDIX system and a telephone jack. Place the modem close enough so each of the cables can easily reach. Also make sure the power cord on the modem is within reach of a power outlet.
2. Connect the modem to Port B of the Definity Audix system.
  - a. Connect the modem to Definity Audix and to a telephone jack as shown in [Figure 2-8](#).
  - b. Plug the modem power cord into a wall outlet and power on the modem.
  - c. Set the modem options. Refer to [Appendix H](#), for a complete list of option settings for all supported modems.
3. Connect a modem to the terminal.
  - a. If you are installing a new terminal, unpack it according to the instructions supplied with the terminal.
  - b. Place the terminal on a suitable table and connect the keyboard.
  - c. Place the other modem between a telephone jack and the terminal (within reach of a power outlet).
  - d. Connect the equipment as shown in [Figure 2-8](#).

 **NOTE:**

If you connect the modem to the DCE port on a 715 terminal, you must also connect a null modem cable between the modem and the 715 terminal.

- e. Plug the modem power cord into a wall outlet and power on the modem.
  - f. Set the options on the terminal and modem. Refer to [Appendix H](#) for a list of important option settings for all supported terminals and modems.
4. At the terminal, enter **AT**

If the modem is installed correctly, it displays “OK” on the terminal screen.
5. Enter **ATDT** and the telephone number of the modem connected to the DEFINITY AUDIX system ADMIN port (listed on [Worksheet E-1](#)).

If the terminal is installed correctly and the DEFINITY AUDIX system is in the AUDIX state, the screen displays the login prompt.

If the terminal does not display the login prompt when the DEFINITY AUDIX system is in the AUDIX state, press **(RETURN)** a few times. If the login prompt still does not appear, see the troubleshooting procedures for terminal connections in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121.
6. Log in to the DEFINITY AUDIX system (see [Task 2-5](#) for login details).

If you can't log in successfully, contact the remote service center.

- Continue with [Task 2-4](#).

### Task 2-3C: Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via Asynchronous Data Units (ADUs)

This task describes how to connect a terminal via ADUs to Port B, although the same procedure can be used to connect the terminal to Port A.

Refer to [Figure 2-9](#) when performing this task.

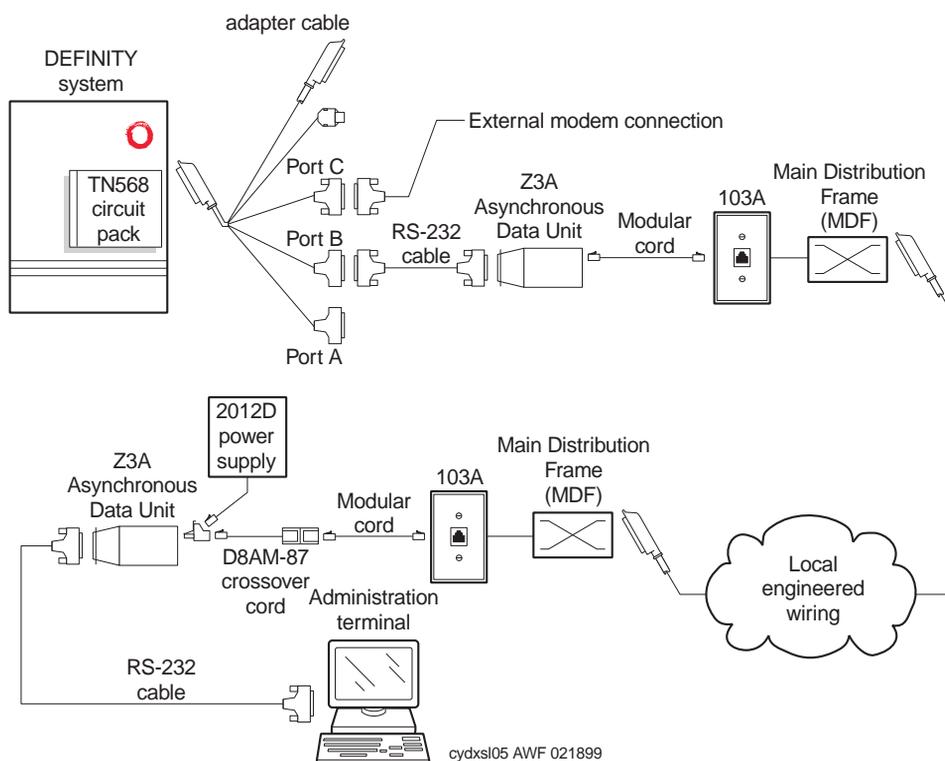


Figure 2-9. Installing an Additional Administration Terminal to DEFINITY AUDIX via ADUs

1. In the room where the switch and DEFINITY AUDIX system are located, connect the Z3A-4 ADU to the DEFINITY AUDIX system and a telephone jack as shown in [Figure 2-9](#).



**NOTE:**

The Z23A ADU power supply can be connected to either ADU.

To connect the 2012D ADU Power Supply to the ADU, follow the steps below:

- a. Attach the 400B2 adapter to the ADU.
  - b. Plug the power supply into the adapter.
  - c. Plug the power cord of the power supply into a wall outlet.
2. In the terminal room, connect the Z3A-1 ADU to the terminal.
    - a. If you are installing a new terminal, unpack it according to the instructions supplied with the terminal.
    - b. Place the terminal on a suitable table and connect the keyboard.
    - c. Connect the equipment as shown in [Figure 2-9](#). (The Z23A ADU power supply can be connected to either ADU.)



**NOTE:**

If you connect the ADU to the DCE port on a 715 terminal, you must also connect a null modem cable between the ADU and the 715 terminal.

- d. Power on the terminal.
- e. Set the terminal options. Refer to [Appendix H](#) for a list of important option settings for all supported terminals.

If the terminal is installed correctly and the DEFINITY AUDIX system is in the AUDIX state, the screen displays the login prompt.

If the terminal does not display the login prompt when the DEFINITY AUDIX system is in the AUDIX state, try pressing **(RETURN)** a few times. If the login prompt still does not appear, see the troubleshooting procedures for terminal connections in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121.

3. Continue with [Task 2-4](#) (DS integration).

### Task 2-3D: Installing an Additional Administration Terminal via 7400A Data Modules

This task describes how to connect a terminal via 7400A data modules to Port B, although the same procedure can be used to connect the terminal to Port A.

Refer to [Figure 2-10](#) when performing this task.

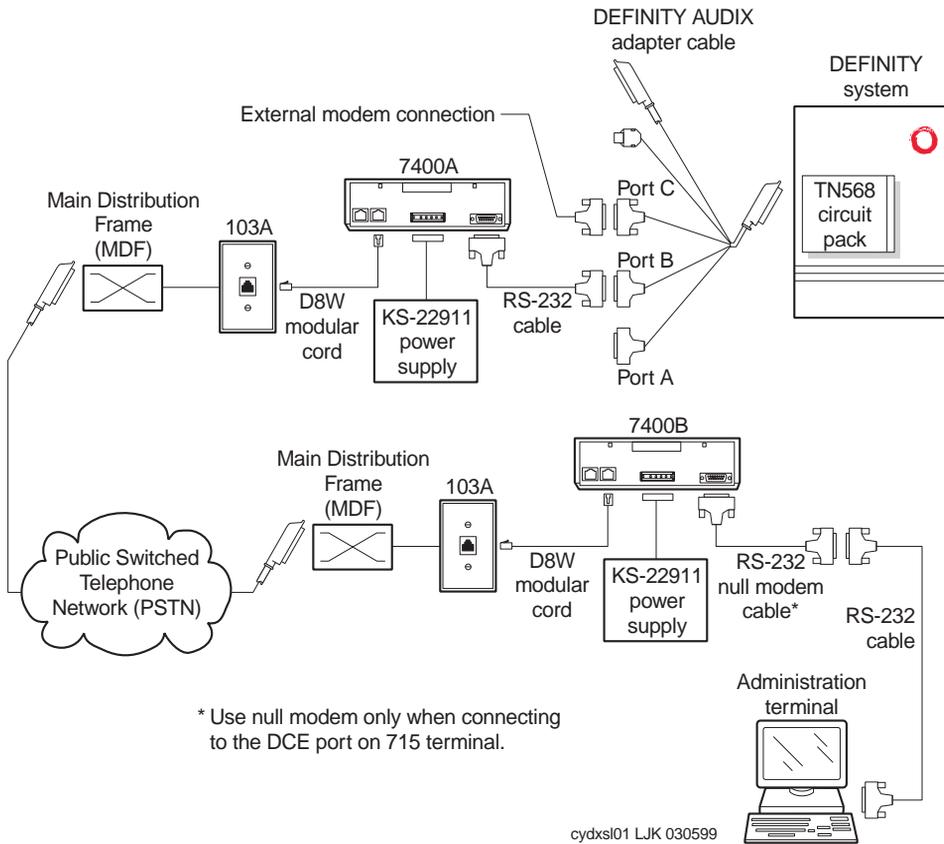


Figure 2-10. Installing an Additional Administration Terminal to the DEFINITY AUDIX system via 7400 Data Modules

 NOTE:

The DEFINITY AUDIX system requires the use of a 7400A data module on the switch side of the configuration. You can also use a 7400A data module on the terminal side. However, the 7400B data module is easier to set up and use. Therefore, this procedure describes how to connect a 7400B data module to the terminal. If you are using two 7400A data modules, connect the second 7400A the same as the 7400B, but set the options as described in "Using the Front Panel in 7400A Data Module User's Manual," 555-020-706.

1. Make sure the EIA connector card on the 7400A (located under the top panel) is set to DCE (the factory default). If not, unplug the card and turn it around to the DCE setting. See the 7400A Data Module User's Manual, 555-020-706, for details.
2. Connect the 7400A data module to the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
  - a. Connect the equipment as shown in [Figure 2-10](#).
  - b. Connect the 4-pin connector on the 7400A power supply to the POWER connector on the data module. Plug the power supply into a wall outlet.
  - c. Set the options and interface baud rate on the 7400A data module. Refer to "Using the Front Panel in the 7400A Data Module User's Manual," 555-020-706, for details.
3. In the terminal room, connect the 7400B data module to the terminal.
  - a. If you are installing a new terminal, unpack it according to the instructions supplied with the terminal.
  - b. Place the terminal on a suitable table and connect the keyboard.
  - c. Check the dip switches inside the front panel. They are set to the OFF position when the terminal is shipped. If you are not connecting a telephone with this data module, reset the first dip switch (1) to the ON position. If you are connecting a telephone, leave all dip switches OFF.
  - d. Connect the equipment as shown in [Figure 2-10](#)

 NOTE:

If you connect the data module to the DCE port on a 715 terminal, you must also connect a null modem cable between the data module and the 715 terminal.

- e. Connect the 7400B power supply to the data module, and plug the power supply into a wall outlet.
  - f. Plug the terminal power cord into a wall outlet. Power on the terminal.
4. Set the terminal options. Refer to [Appendix H](#), for a list of important option settings for all supported terminals.

 NOTE:

When installing a serial printer on all but a 610 BCT or the 615 BCT, set the options on the printer as described in the manual supplied with the printer. Then set the corresponding options on the terminal to match. On the 610 BCT or the 615 BCT, set the terminal options before you set the printer options.

5. At the terminal, enter **AT**

If the 7400B data module is connected correctly, the terminal displays "OK".

6. Enter **ATDT** and the telephone number of the 7400A data module connected to the DEFINITY AUDIX system (refer to [Worksheet E-1](#) for this number).

After a connect interval, if the terminal and 7400 data modules are installed correctly and the DEFINITY AUDIX system is in the AUDIX state, the screen displays the login prompt.

If login prompt is not displayed when the DEFINITY AUDIX system is in the AUDIX state, try pressing **(RETURN)** a few times. If the login prompt still does not appear, see the troubleshooting procedures for terminal connections in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121.

7. Determine your next step:
  - If you are installing a printer, continue with [Task 2-4](#).
  - If you are not installing a printer, continue with [Task 2-5](#).

## Task 2-4: Install the Printer (Optional)

This task is required only if the customer requested a printer on a DEFINITY AUDIX system terminal.

This task describes how to install a Lucent printer. For other printers, follow the instructions supplied with the printer, making sure you set the options required for the DEFINITY AUDIX system as described in this task.

 NOTE:

If you connect a serial printer to the DEFINITY AUDIX system, you can not administer the terminal to accept dual hosts.

1. Set up the printer.
  - a. Unpack the printer according to the instructions supplied with the printer.
  - b. Place the printer on a suitable table.
  - c. Connect the power cord to the printer and plug the cord into a wall outlet.

## 2 Hardware Installation

### Finalize and Test the Hardware

2-25

- d. Be sure that the printer has paper, the ribbon is properly installed, and the cover is closed.
  2. Connect the printer to the terminal.
    - a. Connect one end of the printer cable to either the serial or parallel port on the terminal depending on which type of terminal and printer you are installing. Secure the connector with the captive screws.
-  **NOTE:**  
If you are connecting a serial printer to the DTE connector on a 715 terminal, you must connect a null modem between the printer and the terminal.
- b. Connect the other end to the matching port (serial or parallel) on the printer.
  3. Set the options on the printer.
  4. Proceed to [Task 2-5](#).

## Task 2-5: Finalize and Test the Hardware

---

1. Verify that the DEFINITY AUDIX system is in the AUDIX state.

To do so, check the faceplate of the DEFINITY AUDIX system. If the system is in the AUDIX state, the LEDs will look as follows: red - any state, green - off, yellow - on.
2. Log in to the DEFINITY AUDIX system at the terminal (both terminals if you have installed more than one) to verify that the terminals and modems (if applicable) are connected and set up correctly.

 **NOTE:**

If the login prompt is not displayed, press **(RETURN)** once or twice.

- a. At the login prompt, type **craft** and press **(RETURN)**.

 **NOTE:**

To send the information to the DEFINITY AUDIX system, the **(RETURN)** key (part of the numeric keypad) must be pressed after you type a command or a response to a prompt. Note that on some keyboards, this key is labeled **(ENTER)** instead of **(RETURN)**.

The system displays the Password prompt.

- b. Enter **crftpw**

The system displays the Enter terminal type prompt.

## 2 Hardware Installation

### Finalize and Test the Hardware

2-26

- c. Enter one of the following:
- **513** for the following terminals:
    - 513 BCT
    - 715
    - 610 BCT with a 513 emulation package
    - 615 BCT with a 513 emulation package
    - PC with a 513 emulation package



#### NOTE:

Since **513** is the default, you can just press **RETURN** to select it.

- **4410** for the following terminals:
  - 4410
  - 5410 terminal
  - 610 BCT with a 4410 emulation package.
  - 615 BCT with a 4410 emulation package.
  - PC with a 4410 emulation package.
- **4425** for the following terminals:
  - 4425
  - 5425
  - PC with a 4425 emulation package
- **5420** for the following terminals:
  - 5420
  - 4415

If the terminals and modems (if applicable) are connected properly and the options are set correctly, the system displays the AUDIX command line.



#### NOTE:

If you have installed more than one terminal, you can use either one for the remainder of this task.

3. Verify that the hardware and software components are installed properly. At the DEFINITY AUDIX system command line, enter **list configuration**

The system displays the List Configuration screen. The following screen shows sample locations, board codes, and vintages.

```

drmf15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
list configuration
LIST CONFIGURATION

Software Uintage : Release 4.0, Issue 1

Location Type Board Code Uintage
01C06 MFB_BD TN568 1
386_FW 1
01C0600 DISK
01C0602 MO_DISK

enter command:
    
```

Figure 2-11. List Configuration Screen

**NOTE:**

The `Location` field initially displays “1a01” for component types MFB\_BD, DISK, and MO\_DISK since they are not yet administered. Ignore this field.

4. Place the label containing the DEFINITY AUDIX system shutdown warning next to the cabinet power switch.
5. Give the program disk, language disk, and one of the blank magneto-optical cartridge disks to the DEFINITY AUDIX system administrator, or put them in a safe place away from electromagnetic parts. Keep the other blank magneto-optical disk. You will install it in the drive later when you complete [Task 5-3](#).
6. Continue with [Chapter 3](#).

# Definity AUDIX Option Administration

# 3

---

This chapter describes the tasks required to activate the customer options on the DEFINITY AUDIX System.

## Worksheets Needed

---

Before beginning these tasks, make sure you have completed the following worksheets (included as appendices).

- [Worksheet C-1: Activate Customer Options](#)
- [Worksheet C-2: Activate IMAPI for the AUDIX Server Hardware \(LAN\) Options](#)
- [Worksheet C-8: Add Subscribers](#)

## Dual Administration on the 715 Terminal

---

If you are using the 715 terminal, you can log on to both the switch and the DEFINITY AUDIX system to perform administration tasks and can easily toggle back and forth between the two. To use this feature, you must connect both the switch and DEFINITY AUDIX to a common terminal, then configure the terminal as a dual host.

The toggling functions are controlled by the four function keys, F1, F2, F3, and F8 as described in [Table 3-1](#).

**Table 3-1. Function Keys Used for Windowing on the 715**

Key	Operation
Ctrl+F3	Enables the toggling function keys and displays their labels
F1	Turns off the toggling function keys
F2	Toggles between the DEFINITY AUDIX system window and the switch window
F3	Toggles between split-screen mode and full-screen mode
Ctrl+F8	Enables the DEFINITY AUDIX function keys and displays their labels (only in the DEFINITY AUDIX system window). Ctrl+F3 enables the windowing keys again and displays their labels.

## DEFINITY AUDIX Function Keys

You can press the following function keys to perform basic tasks on the DEFINITY AUDIX system:

**Table 3-2. Function Keys to Perform Tasks on the DEFINITY AUDIX system**

Key	Operation
F1	Cancel the current task
F2	Refresh the screen
F3	Enter (or continue) the current command
F4	Clear a field value
F5	Display an explanation of the "Help" and "Choice" function keys
F6	List choices to type in the command line
F7	Display the next page
F8	Display the previous page

## Task 3-1: Activate Customer Options

Customer options are normally activated before the system is shipped. Complete this task to ensure that the customer options are activated and set to their correct values. Use [Worksheet C-1](#) to complete this task.

- At the DEFINITY AUDIX administration terminal, enter **display system-parameters customer-options**

The system displays the System-Parameters Customer-Options screen.

```

drmf15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
change system-parameters customer-options Page 1 of 2
SYSTEM-PARAMETERS CUSTOMER-OPTIONS

Port Emulation Type: tn2181
Switch Integration Type: display-set
Maximum Number of Voice Ports: 12
Maximum Number of Digital Networking Ports: 0
AMIS Analog Networking? y
Multilingual? n
Maximum Number of IMAPI Sessions: 32
Hours of Voice Storage Purchased: 40
Total Hours on Disk: 95

enter command:
    
```

Figure 3-1. System-Parameters Customer-Options Screen



**NOTE:**

The DEFINITY AUDIX Status line displays an “M” for major alarm (and possibly other alarms) in the alarms field. The alarms should resolve themselves when you administer the voice ports in [Task 5-1E](#) and can be ignored at this time.

- Compare the value of the following fields on the System-Parameters Customer-Options screen with the values entered in [Worksheet C-1](#).
  - Port Emulation Type
  - Switch Integration Type

- Maximum Number of Voice Ports
  - Maximum Number of Digital Networking Ports
  - AMIS Analog Networking?
  - Multilingual?
  - Maximum Number of IMAPI Sessions
  - Hours of Voice Storage Purchased
9. Press **F1** (Cancel) to exit the screen.
  10. If the value of any of these fields is *not* as specified on [Worksheet C-1](#), contact the remote service center to have the values corrected.
  11. With the cursor on the command line, enter **logoff** to log off the terminal.
  12. Continue with [Chapter 4](#).

## Initial Switch Administration: G3r/R5r

# 4

---

This chapter describes the required switch administration for the DEFINITY AUDIX system R4.0 on the following DEFINITY switches:

- Release 5r
- G3r (V1 Release 5.4 or greater)
- G3r (V2-V4, Release R5 or greater)

**⇒ NOTE:**

If you are changing the type of switch integration or the number of voice ports on an existing system, skip this chapter and complete the appropriate procedure in [Appendix I](#).

## Worksheets Needed

---

Before beginning these tasks, make sure you have the completed the following worksheets.

- [Worksheet A-2: Port Slot Assignments \(For Carrier Rearrangement\)](#)
- [Worksheet B-1: Administer the Voice Ports as Stations \(Digital Port Emulation\)](#)
- [Worksheet B-2: Assign the Hunt Group \(Digital Port Emulation\)](#)
- [Worksheet B-3: Assign the Call Coverage Path for Voice Ports \(Digital Port Emulation\)](#)
- [Worksheet B-4: Assign the Call Coverage Path for Subscribers \(Digital Port Emulation\)](#)

## What You Must Know Before You Begin This Chapter

Before you begin this chapter, you must know which options the DEFINITY AUDIX system is using. You can dial into the DEFINITY AUDIX system and enter **display system-parameters customer-options** to view the following information.

- The number of voice ports.
- Whether the system is using Display Set (DS) switch integration or Control Link (CL) switch integration.
- Whether digital networking is used. Digital networking can only be used with 8 or fewer voice ports. Digital port emulation (TN754 or TN2181) is required.
- Whether digital port emulation (TN754 or TN2181) or analog port emulation (TN746) is used. We recommend that customers who currently have analog port emulation switch to digital port emulation. Analog port emulation may have been used on earlier releases of the DEFINITY AUDIX system . See [Appendix I](#) if analog port emulation was used previously and you want to change the type to digital port emulation.

## Translation Overview Tables

Use the following tables to check the translations on the switch for the DEFINITY AUDIX system. Each table lists the required field values for the relevant switch administration screens.



**CAUTION:**

*Do not use the following tables to administer DEFINITY AUDIX on the switch unless you are very experienced with this installation. Instead, refer to the tasks following the tables for detailed instructions.*

**Table 4-1. Field Values for Voice Port Assignments: TN2181 emulation**

Field	G3V2-V4/R5/R6	R7 or Greater
Circuit Pack screen; Code: first slot	blank	ADX12D
Circuit Pack screen; Code: second slot	TN2181	TN568
Station screen; Type	7405D	ADX16D

**Table 4-1. Field Values for Voice Port Assignments: TN2181 emulation**

Field	G3V2-V4/R5/R6	R7 or Greater
Name - Ports 1-10 and 12	AUDIX plus port number	AUDIX plus port number
Name - Port 11	AUDIX TRANSFER	AUDIX TRANSFER
Coverage Path	# assigned to voice ports	# assigned to voice ports
Display Module	y	y
LWC Reception	default value	default value
LWC Activation	y	y
Coverage Message Retrieval	y	y
Restrict Last Appearance (ports 1 through 4 and port 12)	y	y
Restrict Last Appearance ( ports 5 through 11)	n	n
Disp Client Redir	y if hospitality = y on switch	y if hospitality = y on switch
Display Language	English	English
All other features	n	n

**Table 4-2. Field Values for Button Assignments (Digital Port Emulation)**

	ports 1 through 4 and port 12	ports 5 through 11
Buttons 1 – 9	call-appr	call-appr
Button 10	call-appr	brdg-appr Btn: 10 Ext: xxxxx (xxxxx = extension # for port 12)

**Table 4-3. Field Values for Feature Button Assignments (Digital Port Emulation)**

Button number	Feature Buttons
1	lwc-store
2	lwc-cancel
3	aux-work Grp: xx (xx = DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group number)



**NOTE:**

If the station screen includes the RC: \_\_\_ field, leave it blank.

**Table 4-4. Field Values for Display Button Assignments (Digital Port Emulation)**

Button number	Display Button Assignment
1	normal
2	inspect
3	date-time
4	directory
5	cov-msg-rt
6	next
7	delete-msg

## Administration Overview

The chapter describes required administration for both CL Integration and DS Integration. Refer to [Chapter 6, "Optional Switch Feature Administration"](#), for any optional switch feature administration.

## Native Mode of the Switch

The DEFINITY AUDIX R4.0 system uses the TN568 circuit pack. However, many switches do not recognize this circuit pack, so the DEFINITY AUDIX system must emulate a circuit pack recognized by the switch (in this case, the TN2181). The DEFINITY AUDIX system can be configured for ports in increments of 2, with a

maximum of 12 ports with no networking ports, or 8 ports with one networking port.

Switches with R7 or greater software recognize the TN568 circuit pack as a DEFINITY AUDIX system. This recognition is called *native mode* and helps service technicians more quickly recognize a DEFINITY AUDIX system when diagnosing alarms or other problems. See the table below for the circumstances in which native mode support exists.

## Digital Networking Availability

To enable networking, you must administer voice ports as digital stations, although the DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack may be administered on the switch in either DS or CL integration. DEFINITY AUDIX Version 4.0 supports only one digital networking port. To administer digital networking, you can not administer more than 8 voice ports on the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

## Summary of Integrations, Emulations, and Capacities

The following table lists the various combinations of integration, emulation, and capacities available when administering the switch to work with the DEFINITY AUDIX system

Table 4-5. Summary of Integration, Emulations, and Capacities

Switch Version	Integration	Emulation	Native (y/ n)	Networking (y/n)	TN568 max pts vm / net
G3V2/V3V4 /R5/R6	CL	TN2181 (Digital)	no	yes	12/0 8/1
	CL	TN746 (Analog)	no	no	12/0
	DS	TN2181 (Digital)	no	yes	12/0 8/1
R7 or greater	CL	TN2181 (Digital)	yes	yes	12/0 8/1
	CL	TN746 (Analog)	yes	no	12/0
	DS	TN2181 (Digital)	yes	yes	12/0 8/1

## **TN2181 (Digital Port) Emulation, Display Set Integration**

---

The tasks in this chapter administer the DEFINITY AUDIX system to emulate the TN2181 digital port circuit pack on the switch using DS integration.

Complete the following tasks to administer the voice ports on the switch.

- [Identifying the DEFINITY AUDIX Circuit Pack](#)
- [Assigning the User Defined Adjunct Names](#)
- [Defining the Call Coverage Path for Voice Ports](#)
- [Defining Call Coverage Paths for Subscribers](#)
- [Administering the Voice Ports as Stations](#)
- [Assigning Voice Ports to the Hunt Group](#)
- [Administering the Digital Networking Port \(Optional\)](#)

### **Task 4-1: Identifying the DEFINITY AUDIX Circuit Pack**

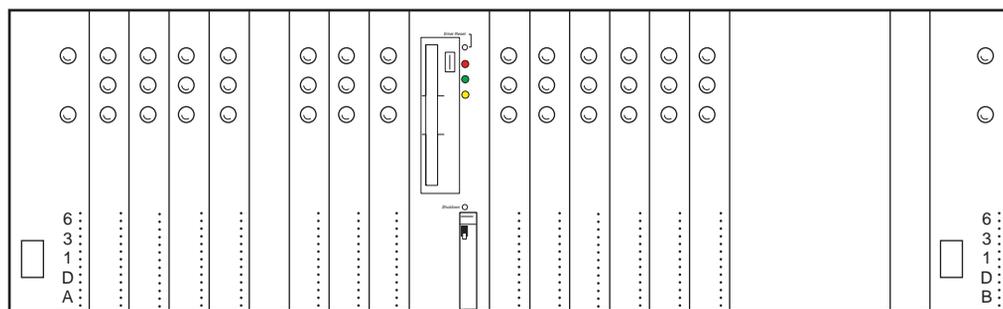
---

When the DEFINITY AUDIX system circuit pack is in place in the carrier, the switch recognizes the circuit pack and the circuit pack information appears on the circuit pack screen. You do not have to administer anything.

However, when you first install the DEFINITY AUDIX system or change the circuit pack emulation, you should ensure that the switch identifies the correct circuit pack emulation. To check the DEFINITY AUDIX system circuit pack on the switch, obtain the port slot assignment from [Worksheet A-2](#). The program manager completed this worksheet with the customer during the planning phase for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

The DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack is a TN568. The DEFINITY AUDIX R4.0 occupies two port slots on the switch, and the TN568 circuit pack occupies the second of the two slots.

[Figure 4-1](#) shows the DEFINITY AUDIX system in slots 8 and 9 of a switch carrier. The TN568 circuit pack resides in the second slot, Slot 9.



B	POWER UNIT	PWR UNIT	EXPN	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	POWER UNIT
		UNIT	INTF																			
		SERV	1	2																		

Top white/  
 bottom purple  
 (two slots)

Purple slots  
 (port slots)

fpdxfull EWS 121498

Figure 4-1. DEFINITY AUDIX System in a Switch Carrier (Slots 8 and 9)

Use the following procedure to verify that the circuit pack settings are correct:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **display circuit-packs cabinet** where *cabinet* is the number of the switch cabinet.

The Circuit Pack screen for the switch appears.

```
display circuit-packs 3                               Page 4 of 5
                                                    CARRIER 2B

      Cabinet: 1                                     Carrier B
Cabinet Layout: five carrier                         Carrier Type: port

Slot Code  Sfx   Name                Slot Code  Sfx   Name
 01:TN762           HYBRID LINE        11:TN742           ANALOG LINE
 02:TN742           ANALOG LINE        12:                :
 03:TN742           ANALOG LINE        13:TN771    B      MAINTENANCE/TEST
 04:TN742           ANALOG LINE        14:TN748    B      TONE DETECTOR
 05:TN742           ANALOG LINE        15:                :
 06:TN742           ANALOG LINE        16:                :
 07:                :                17:                :
 08:                :                18:                :
 09:TN2181         DIGITAL LINE      19:                :
 10:TN742           ANALOG LINE        20:                :

'#' indicates circuit pack conflict.      * Use slots 01-18 with
                                           SCC Port Cabinet.
                                           * Use slots 01-20 with
                                           MCC Port Carrier.
```

Figure 4-2. Example of a Circuit Pack Screen with TN2181 Emulation (G3rV2)

```

display circuit-packs 3                                     Page 3 of 5   SPE A
                CIRCUIT PACKS
    Cabinet: 3                      Carrier: C
    Cabinet Layout: five-carrier     Carrier Type: port

Slot Code Sfx Name                Slot Code Sfx Name
00:                                     11:
01:                                     12: TN465 B   CO TRUNK
02: TN754 B   DIGITAL LINE         13: TN464 C   UDS1 INTERFACE
03:                                     14: TN754 B   DIGITAL LINE
04:                                     15: TN754 B   DIGITAL LINE
05:                                     16:
06:                                     17:
07: TN754 B   DIGITAL LINE         18:
08: ADX16     RESERVED-AUDIX-16D  19:
09: TN568     MULTI-FUNCTION       21:

'#' indicates circuit pack conflict.
    
```

Figure 4-3. Example of a Circuit Pack Screen with TN2181 Emulation (R7r)

2. Check that the values listed on the screen correspond to the value in the table below.

Table 4-6. Circuit Pack Screen Entries

Field	Description
Slot	The port slot in which the DEFINITY AUDIX circuit board resides. The DEFINITY AUDIX circuit board occupies the second slot of the two port slots occupied by the system.
Code	The circuit pack identification code in the slot occupied by the TN568 circuit pack (second slot).  <b>TN2181</b> for G3V2/V3/V4/R5/R6 <b>TN568</b> for R7 or greater  The switch populates the remaining information, if any, for the first slot.
Sfx	Suffix for the circuit pack identification code. This field should be blank.

**Table 4-6. Circuit Pack Screen Entries**

Field	Description
Name	This display varies depending on the switch type and version.

3. Press **ENTER** or **CANCEL** to exit the screen.
4. If the Code field does not display the correct emulation for the DEFINITY AUDIX system, call the remote service center.
5. Continue with [Task 4-2](#).

## **Task 4-2: Assigning the User Defined Adjunct Names**

To enter the name of the DEFINITY AUDIX system on the User Defined Adjunct screen:

Use the following procedure:

1. To access the User Defined Adjunct Names screen, enter **change adjunct-name** at the switch administration terminal.

The User Defined Adjunct Names screen appears:

```
change adjunct-names                               Page 1 of 1       SPE A

                USER DEFINED ADJUNCT NAMES

AUDIX NAMES                MESSAGING SERVER NAMES
1: audix                   1: _____
2: audixcl                 2: _____
3: _____              3: _____
4: _____              4: _____
5: _____              5: _____
6: _____              6: _____
7: _____              7: _____
8: _____
```

Figure 4-4. Example of a User Defined Adjunct Names Screen (G3r/R5r)

2. Enter a name for the DEFINITY AUDIX system under AUDIX Names on the screen. The entry can be any alphanumeric sequence up to 7 characters long.
3. Write down the name you have chosen.

During switch administration, you will enter this name on the following screens:

- Voice Port Station screens
  - Page 2 of the Hunt Group screen
  - Processor Channel Assignment screen
4. Continue with [Task 4-3](#).

## Task 4-3: Creating the Hunt Group

Before you can administer voice ports for DEFINITY AUDIX, you must first create a hunt group which you will later assign to each of the voice ports.

To create the hunt group:

1. Obtain the hunt group number from [Worksheet B-2](#).
2. At the switch administration terminal, enter **add hunt-group number** where *number* is the number of the hunt group you obtained in [Step 1](#).  
The Hunt Group screen displays.

 **NOTE:**

If you have not obtained a hunt group number, you can enter **list hunt group** to find an available hunt group, or enter **add hunt-group next** to assign the next available hunt group number.

```
change hunt-group 150                                     Page 1 of 41     SPE B
                                                         HUNT GROUP
  Group Name:
  Group Number:                Group Extension:        Group Type: ucd
                                Skill? n                ACD? n
  Queue? y                     Vector? n
  Security Code:               Night Service Destination:  COR:
  ISDN Caller Disp: mbr-name   Coverage Path:                TN: 1

                                Expected Call Handling Time (sec): 180

  Queue Length:
  Calls Warning Threshold:      Calls Warning Port:
  Time Warning Threshold:      Time Warning Port:
```

Figure 4-5. Example of a Hunt Group Screen — Page 1

 **NOTE:**

The content of the screens and the position of the fields vary with each release of the switch software.

3. Use the entries in the table below and [Worksheet B-2](#) to complete page 1 of the Hunt Group screen.

Table 4-7. Hunt Group Screen Entries — Page 1

Field	Entry
Group Name	<p>The name you want display set users to see when they call the DEFINITY AUDIX system to access voice mail features. Use up to 15 characters. <b>AUDIX</b> must be part of the name, although you can use other characters in addition.</p> <p>Obtain the Group Name from <a href="#">Worksheet B-2</a>.</p>
Group Number	<p>Displays the hunt group number assigned to the hunt group when the <b>add hunt-group</b> command is entered.</p> <p>Write down the Group Number. In <a href="#">Task 4-4</a>, you enter <b>h</b> followed by this number in the Point1 field of the Coverage Path screen.</p>
Group Extension	<p>An unused extension number to be assigned to the hunt group. The extension number must be 3 through 5 digits, and must be compatible with the switch dial plan. This is the extension users will dial to access voice mail features.</p> <p>Obtain the Group Extension from <a href="#">Worksheet B-2</a>.</p>
Group Type	<p><b>ucd</b> (G3V1-V4/R5)  <b>ucd-mia</b> (G3R6 or greater)</p>
Skill?	<b>n</b>
ACD	<p><b>n</b></p> <p>The DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports will not operate in an ACD group.</p>
Queue?	<p><b>y</b></p> <p>A queue is optional but recommended. Refer to <a href="#">Worksheet B-2</a> for information on setting up queues.</p>
Vector?	<p><b>n</b></p> <p>The DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group may be vector controlled. See <a href="#">Worksheet B-2</a> to set up vector control.</p>
Security Code	Leave this field blank.

Table 4-7. Hunt Group Screen Entries — Page 1

Field	Entry
Night Service Destination	The destination where calls to this hunt group will redirect when the hunt group is in the night service mode. Allowable entries are an assigned extension number (can be a VDN extension), or the attendant. You can also leave this field blank. This field will be left blank for most applications, but, occasionally, an application requires calls to be redirected when the hunt group is in night service mode.
COR	Enter the class of restriction (COR) number that reflects the desired restriction for the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group. Obtain the COR from <a href="#">Worksheet B-2</a> . For security reasons, you can assign the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group its own COR. This COR should restrict the hunt group from accessing all outgoing trunks, or allow access only to those outgoing trunks needed for Outcalling or AMIS Analog Networking. We recommend that you do not use the default COR.
ISDN Caller Display	Enter <b>grp-name</b> or <b>mbr-name</b> to specify whether the hunt group name or member name, respectively, will be sent to the originating user (hunt group name will be used for most applications). You can complete this field if the ISDN-PRI option on the switch System-Parameters Customer-Options screen is enabled. If ISDN-PRI is not enabled, this field must be blank.
Coverage Path	Leave this field blank. Do not assign a coverage path to this DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group. Sending a call to somewhere other than the hunt group can cause problems with the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
TN	Tenant Partition Number. Default is 1.
Expected Call Handling Time (sec)	Enter a number from <b>0</b> to <b>9999</b> .
Queue Length	If Queue is <b>y</b> , enter the desired queue length. We recommend using the number of DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports you purchased. For example, you can use entries of <b>2, 4, 6, 8, 10, or 12</b> . Design a queue based on your requirements.
Calls Warning Threshold	Leave this field blank.
Time Warning Threshold	Leave this field blank.
Calls Warning Port	Leave this field blank.
Time Warning Port	Leave this field blank.

4. Press **NEXTPAGE**.

The switch displays page 2 of the Hunt Group screen.

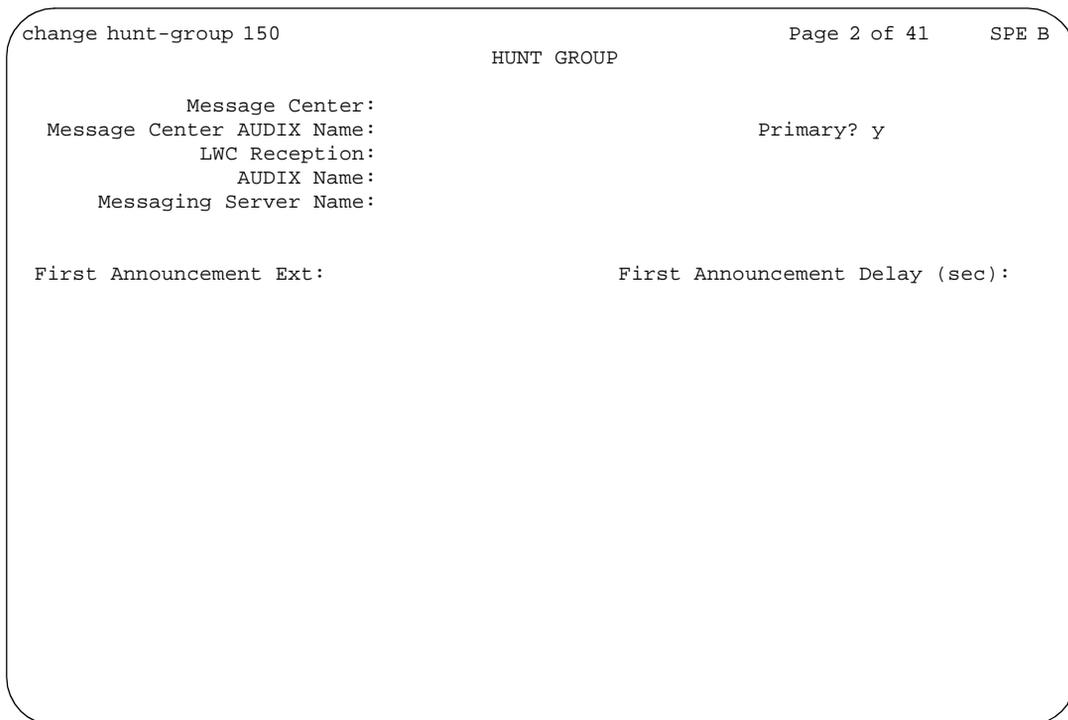


Figure 4-6. Example of a Hunt Group Screen — Page 2

5. Use the entries in the table below to complete page 2 of the Hunt Group screen.

Table 4-8. Hunt Group Screen Entries — Page 2

Field	Description
Message Center	<b>none</b>
Calling Party Number to INTUITY AUDIX?	<b>n</b> (G3R7 or greater)

**Table 4-8. Hunt Group Screen Entries — Page 2**

Field	Description
LWC Reception	none
First Announcement Extension	A recorded announcement extension number. You can leave this field blank. This is the announcement the caller receives after being in the queue for the time interval specified in the First Announcement Delay field. (See " <a href="#">Switch Recorded Announcement</a> " on page 66 in Chapter 6, " <a href="#">Optional Switch Feature Administration</a> ", for instructions on setting up a recorded announcement.)
First Announcement Delay (sec)	This field is optional if the queue field is <b>y</b> and must be left blank if there is no first announcement. Enter the number of seconds that a call can remain in queue before the associated first announcement is given to the calling party.

6. Press  to save the hunt group.



**NOTE:**

You will add the DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports to this hunt group in [Task 4-7](#).

7. Continue with [Task 4-4](#).

## **Task 4-4: Defining the Call Coverage Path for Voice Ports**

Define a call coverage path for the voice ports using the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group as Coverage Point 1. The DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports cover to themselves.

To define a call coverage path for the voice ports only:

1. At the switch terminal, enter **add coverage path number**, where *number* is the call coverage path number assigned in [Worksheet B-3](#).



**NOTE:**

If you have not obtained a coverage path number, you can enter **list coverage path** to find an available coverage path, or enter **add coverage path next** to assign the next available hunt group number.

The switch displays the Coverage Path screen.

```

add coverage path 4                                     Page 1 of 1     SPE A
                COVERAGE PATH
                Coverage Path Number: 4
                Next Path Number:  ___   Linkage:

COVERAGE CRITERIA

  Station/Group Status      Inside Call      Outside Call
  Active?                   n                n
  Busy?                     n                n
  Don't Answer?            n                n      Number of Rings: 2
  All?                      Y                Y
DND/SAC/Go to Cover?      n                n

COVERAGE POINTS
  Terminate to Coverage Pts. with Bridged Appearances? y
  Point1: h150              Point2:
  Point4:                   Point5:              Point3:
                           Point6:
    
```

Figure 4-7. Example of a Voice Port Coverage Path Screen

2. Use the entries in the table below to complete the Coverage Path screen.

Table 4-9. Voice Port Coverage Path Screen Entries

Field	Entry								
Coverage Path Number	Displays the coverage path number assigned to the coverage path when the <b>add coverage path</b> command is entered. This number should appear in the Coverage Path field on all of the voice port Station screens.								
Coverage Criteria	The conditions that, when met, cause the call to redirect to coverage.								
Station/Group Status	<table border="0" style="width: 100%;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%;">Inside Call</td> <td style="width: 50%;">Outside Call</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Active?</td> <td>n</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Busy?</td> <td>n</td> </tr> <tr> <td>Don't Answer?</td> <td>n</td> </tr> </table>	Inside Call	Outside Call	Active?	n	Busy?	n	Don't Answer?	n
Inside Call	Outside Call								
Active?	n								
Busy?	n								
Don't Answer?	n								

Table 4-9. Voice Port Coverage Path Screen Entries — *Continued*

Field	Entry
All? All calls go immediately to coverage	<b>y</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>y</b></span>
DND/SAC/Go to Cover?	<b>n</b> <span style="float: right;"><b>n</b></span>
Linkage	This is a display-only field that shows up to two additional coverage paths, when assigned, that the Next Path Number field entry is linked to.
Next Path Number	Optional. Enter the number of the coverage path to which a call will be redirected in case of coverage failure at the current path.
Number of Rings	Use the default. All calls go immediately to coverage.
Point1	<b>h</b> followed by the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group number assigned in <a href="#">Task 4-7</a> .

3. Press .

4. Continue with [Task 4-5](#)

## Task 4-5: Defining Call Coverage Paths for Subscribers

Define a call coverage path for subscribers with the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group as a coverage point. You may need to define several call coverage paths depending on how the customer wants to handle call coverage for groups of subscribers. If the DEFINITY AUDIX system was installed on an existing switch, you may need to add the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group as another coverage point for existing coverage paths. Refer to [Worksheet B-4](#) for coverage paths selected by the customer.

### NOTE:

For Display Set integration, do not use the same coverage path used for the DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports. The voice ports' coverage path covers to the AUDIX hunt group unconditionally. Unconditional coverage is undesirable for subscribers.

To define a call coverage path for subscribers, use the following procedure:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **add coverage path number**, where *number* is the Call Coverage Path Number assigned in [Worksheet B-4](#).

The switch displays the Coverage Path screen.

```

change coverage path 16                                     Page 1 of 1      SPE B
                                COVERAGE PATH
                                Coverage Path Number: 16
                                Next Path Number:          Linkage

COVERAGE CRITERIA

    Station/Group Status      Inside Call      Outside Call
        Active?                n                n
        Busy?                  Y                Y
    Don't Answer?            Y                Y      Number of Rings: 2
        All?                    n                n
    DND/SAC/Goto Cover?     Y                Y

COVERAGE POINTS

    Terminate to Coverage Pts. with Bridged Appearance? n

    Point1: h150              Point2:          Point3:
    Point4:                   Point5:          Point6:
    
```

Figure 4-8. Example Subscriber Coverage Path Screen

2. Use the entries in the table below to complete the Coverage Path screen.

Table 4-10. Subscriber Coverage Path Screen Entries

Field	Entry
Coverage Path Number	Displays the coverage path number assigned to the coverage path when the <b>add coverage path</b> command is entered. This number should appear in the Coverage Path field on all subscriber station screens so that user stations will cover to the DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports.
Coverage Criteria	The conditions that, when met, cause the call to redirect to coverage. See <a href="#">Worksheet B-4</a> for the assigned conditions.  The following conditions are suggestions.

Table 4-10. Subscriber Coverage Path Screen Entries — *Continued*

Field	Entry
Station/Group Status	Inside Call                      Outside Call
Active?	<b>n</b> <b>n</b>
Busy?	<b>y</b> <b>y</b>
Don't Answer?	<b>y</b> <b>y</b>
All?	<b>n</b> <b>n</b>
SAC/Go to Cover?	<b>y</b> <b>y</b>
Linkage	This is a display-only field that shows up to two additional coverage paths, when assigned, that the Next Path Number field entry is linked to.
Next Path Number	Optional. Enter the number of the coverage path to which a call will be redirected in case of coverage failure at the current path.
Number of Rings	The number of rings ( <b>1</b> through <b>99</b> ). Three rings (default) is the recommended timing. This is the number of rings a user's voice terminal will ring before the switch sees a <i>no answer</i> condition and sends the call to the first coverage point. See <a href="#">Worksheet B-4</a> .
Coverage Points	The Call Coverage Paths for Point1, Point2, or Point3. Enter <b>h</b> followed by the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group number assigned in <a href="#">Task 4-7</a> .

3. Press .
4. Continue with [Task 4-6](#).

## Task 4-6: Administering the Voice Ports as Stations

In the following procedure, you will administer each of the DEFINITY AUDIX system voice ports. Administer all 12 voice ports regardless of how many ports were purchased. The DEFINITY AUDIX system uses the unconfigured ports for message waiting indicator updates, switch audits, and time/date requests.

### NOTE:

Before you administer the voice ports, you must first define at least one Class of Service (COS) and one Class of Restriction (COR) to be used exclusively by the voice ports. To administer these changes, see the DEFINITY documentation for your switch.

Information for completing the screens described in this section is available from [Appendix B](#). The project manager completed this worksheet with the customer during the planning phase for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

There are four subtasks for administering a DEFINITY AUDIX voice port.

- [Completing the Station Screen](#)
- [Assigning the Call Appearance Buttons](#)
- [Assigning the Feature Buttons](#)
- [Assigning the Display Buttons](#)

## Rules for Administering the Voice Ports

Use the following rules when administering the voice ports:

- Administer all 12 ports regardless of how many ports were configured for the system.
- Administer voice port 12 first with 10 call appearances.
- Administer voice ports 1 through 4, each with 10 call appearances.
- Set the `Restrict Last Appearance` field to **y** for voice port 12 and voice ports 1 through 4.
- Type the port names in capital letters. Type the name **AUDIX** for all ports except voice port 11. Type **AUDIX TRANSFER** for voice port 11.
- Set the `Restrict Last Appearance` field to **n** for voice ports 5 through 11.
- Bridge button 10 of voice ports 5 through 11 to button 10 of voice port 12.

## Task 4-6A: Completing the Station Screen

Refer to [Worksheet B-1](#) for the information required to complete the screens.

**Voice port 12 must be administered first, because voice ports 5 through 11 have a bridged call appearance to voice port 12.** Voice ports 1 through 4 have the same options as voice port 12, only the `Name` and `Port` fields are different.

Complete the following steps to administer voice port 12:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **add station extension** to add voice port 12. The extension number must be the same length as the DEFINITY AUDIX system subscriber extension numbers. Extension numbers cannot start with 0.

The switch displays the Station screen.

The following figures show examples of the Station screen for ports 1 to 4 and port 12.

```
change station 60012                               Page 1 of 5   SPE B

                                STATION
Extension: 60012      Lock Messages? n      BCC: 0
  Type: 7405D        Security Code:         TN: 1
  Port: 1B0512       Coverage Path 1: 5     COR: 5
  Name: AUDIX 12     Coverage Path 2:         COS: 5

STATION OPTIONS
  Data Module? n
  Display Module? y

                                Feature Module? n
```

Figure 4-9. Example of a Station Screen - Page 1 (Port 12 and Ports 1 to 4)

4 Initial Switch Administration: G3r/R5r  
Administering the Voice Ports as Stations

4-23

```
change station 60012                                     Page 2 of 5      SPE B
                                                         STATION
FEATURE OPTIONS
  LWC Reception: spe
  LWC Activation? y
  CDR Privacy? n
  Redirect Notification? n
  Bridged Call Alerting? n
  Active Station Ringing? single
  AUDIX Name:
  Messaging Server Name:
  Coverage Msg Retrieval? y
  Auto Answer: none
  Data Restriction? n
  Idle Appearance Preference? n
  Restrict Last Appearance? y
  Audible Message Waiting? n
  Display Client Redirection? y
  Select Last Used Appearance? n
```

Figure 4-10. Example of a Station Screen - Page 2 (Port 12 and Ports 1 to 4)

The following figures show examples of the Station screen for ports 5 through 10.

```
change station 60005                               Page 1 of 5   SPE B

                                STATION
Extension: 60005      Lock Messages? n           BCC: 0
Type: 7405D         Security Code:             TN: 1
Port: 04B1305      Coverage Path 1: 5         COR: 5
Name: AUDIX 5      Coverage Path 2:           COS: 5

STATION OPTIONS
  Data Module? n
  Display Module? y

                                Feature Module? n
```

Figure 4-11. Example of a Station Screen - Page 1 (Ports 5 through 10)

```
change station 60005                                     Page 2 of 5      SPE B
                                                         STATION
FEATURE OPTIONS
  LWC Reception: spe
  LWC Activation? y
  CDR Privacy? n
  Redirect Notification? n
  Bridged Call Alerting? n
  Active Station Ringing? single
  AUDIX Name:
  Messaging Server Name:
  Coverage Msg Retrieval? y
  Auto Answer: none
  Data Restriction? n
  Idle Appearance Preference? n
  Restrict Last Appearance? n
  Audible Message Waiting? n
  Display Client Redirection? y
  Select Last Used Appearance? n
```

Figure 4-12. Example of a Station Screen - Page 2 (Ports 5 through 10)

The following figure shows an example of the Station screen for port 11.

```
change station 60011                                     Page 1 of 5      SPE B

Extension: 60011                                         STATION
Type: 7405D                                             Lock Messages? n      BCC: 0
Port: 04B1311                                          Security Code:        TN: 1
Name: AUDIX TRANSFER                                   Coverage Path 1: 5    COR: 5
                                                         Coverage Path 2:      COS: 5

STATION OPTIONS
  Data Module? n
  Display Module? y
                                                         Feature Module? n
```

Figure 4-13. Example Station Screen - Page 1 (Port 11)

```
change station 60011                                     Page 2 of 5      SPE B
                                                         STATION
FEATURE OPTIONS
  LWC Reception: spe
  LWC Activation? y
  CDR Privacy? n
  Redirect Notification? n
  Bridged Call Alerting? n
  Active Station Ringing? single
  AUDIX Name:
  Messaging Server Name:
  Coverage Msg Retrieval? y
  Auto Answer: none
  Data Restriction? n
  Idle Appearance Preference? n
  Restrict Last Appearance? n
  Audible Message Waiting? n
  Display Client Redirection? y
  Select Last Used Appearance? n
```

Figure 4-14. Example Station Screen - Page 2 (Port 11)

2. Use the entries in the table below to complete the Station screen entries for each port.

 **NOTE:**

Some of the entries in the table might be on page 2 of the Station screen for your switch. Press **NEXTPAGE** and **PREVPAGE** to move between the two screens.

Table 4-11. Station Screen Entries

Field	Entry
Extension	A valid extension number (3 to 5 digits) that agrees with the dial plan. Each voice port needs a unique extension number. It is suggested that the number used for the AUDIX TRANSFER extension be an easy number to remember. Obtain the extension from <a href="#">Worksheet B-1</a> .
BCC	Bearer Capability Class is a display-only field set to 0 (default) for stations. (This value indicates voice or voice-grade data.) This field is only displayed when the ISDN-PRI option is enabled on the switch System-Parameters Customer-Options screen.
Type	Select one of the following: <b>7405D</b> (G3V1-V4/R5/R6) <b>ADX16D</b> (G3R7 or greater)
Lock Messages	<b>n</b>
COR	Select a Class of Restriction (COR) used exclusively by the voice ports. The COR should provide security for the voice ports that reflects the desired restriction. Obtain the COR from <a href="#">Worksheet B-1</a> .
Port	The digital port equipment location of the DEFINITY AUDIX system TN568 circuit pack on the switch. Enter 5 to 7 characters (for example, <b>01A0501</b> ). Obtain the port number from <a href="#">Worksheet B-1</a> . <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ The first character identifies the cabinet. The default is <b>1</b> if there is no entry. Valid entries are <b>1, 2, or 3</b>. The next character identifies the carrier (<b>A, B, C, D, or E</b>). The next two characters identify the slot number in the carrier (<b>01 to 20</b> for multi-carrier cabinets or <b>01 to 18</b> for single-carrier cabinets. The DEFINITY AUDIX system occupies two slots in the switch. Enter the number of the second slot. Slot 2 is occupied by the TN568 DEFINITY AUDIX system circuit pack.</li> <li>■ The last two characters identify the circuit number. Valid entries are <b>01 to 12</b>. Assign the first voice port to circuit 01, the second to circuit 02, etc. Voice port 11 should have the name <b>AUDIX TRANSFER</b>.</li> </ul>
Security Code	Leave this field blank.

Table 4-11. Station Screen Entries

Field	Entry
COS	Select a Class of Service (COS) used exclusively by the voice ports. The COS must only allow access to the features Call Forwarding All Calls and Data Privacy (indicated by y). All other features for the COS should be set to n. Obtain this from <a href="#">Worksheet B-1</a> .
Name	<b>AUDIX</b> x where x equals the circuit number of each port except port 11, or enter any other name beginning with AUDIX. Enter the name <b>AUDIX TRANSFER</b> (all capital letters) for voice port 11. The extension number of voice port 11 is used with the Transfer Into Mailbox feature. Obtain the name from <a href="#">Worksheet B-1</a> .
Coverage Path	Enter the same Coverage Path number you created for the voice ports in <a href="#">Task 4-4</a> . This coverage path should cover all calls to the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group. Obtain this number from <a href="#">Worksheet B-1</a> .
LWC Reception	Use the default value
LWC Activation	<b>y</b>  The DEFINITY AUDIX system uses the Leave Word Calling (LWC) switch feature to light and extinguish message waiting indicators (MWIs) on user's voice terminals.
SMDR or CDR Privacy	<b>n</b>
Redirect Notification	<b>n</b>
Per Button Ring Control	<b>n</b>
Bridged Call Alerting	<b>n</b>
Data Module	<b>n</b>
Display Module	<b>y</b>  To operate as a digital voice port, the DEFINITY AUDIX software requires an optional display module.
Auto Select any Idle Appearance	<b>n</b>
Coverage Message Retrieval	<b>y</b>  The DEFINITY AUDIX system does not use this feature at present but may use it in the future.
Auto Answer	<b>n</b>

Table 4-11. Station Screen Entries

Field	Entry
Data Restriction	<b>n</b>
Idle Appearance Preference	<b>n</b>
Restrict Last Appearance	<b>n</b> for voice ports 5 through 11. <b>y</b> for voice ports 1 through 4 and port 12. Call appearance 10 on voice port 12 should not receive incoming calls since other voice ports have a bridged appearance to call appearance 10 of voice port 12. An incoming call to this appearance would cause all voice ports to ring.
Feature Module	<b>n</b>
Coverage Module	<b>n</b>
Disp Client Redir	Displayed if the switch Hospitality feature is activated. Enter <b>y</b> for the voice port to answer calls from stations with a COS having the Client Room option.
Display Language	<b>English</b> (or others, as purchased)
Select Last Used Appearance	<b>n</b>
Active Station Ringing	<b>single</b>
H.320 Conversion	<b>n</b> (G3V6 or greater)
TN	Tenant Partition Number. Default is 1.
Audible Message Waiting	<b>n</b>

3. Press **NEXTPAGE**

Page 2 of the Station screen appears.

4. Continue with [Task 4-6B](#).

### Task 4-6B: Assigning the Call Appearance Buttons

1. Press **NEXTPAGE** if needed to display the Call Appearances screen.

```
add station 60012                                     Page 3 of 5     SPE A

                                     STATION

SITE DATA
  Room:                                     Headset? n
  Jack:                                    Speaker? n
  Cable:                                   Mounting: d
  Floor:                                   Cord Length: 0
  Building:                                Set Color:

ABBREVIATED DIALING
  List1:                                     List2:         List3:

BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS
  1: call-appr                               6: call-appr
  2: call-appr                               7: call-appr
  3: call-appr                               8: call-appr
  4: call-appr                               9: call-appr
  5: call-appr                              10: call-appr
```

Figure 4-15. Example Call Appearances (Port 12 and Ports 1- 4)

```

add station 60005                                     Page 3 of 5      SPE A

                                     STATION

SITE DATA
  Room:                                     Headset? n
  Jack:                                    Speaker? n
  Cable:                                   Mounting: d
  Floor:                                   Cord Length: 0
  Building:                                Set Color:

ABBREVIATED DIALING
  List1:                                     List2:          List3:

BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS
  1: call-appr                               6: call-appr
  2: call-appr                               7: call-appr
  3: call-appr                               8: call-appr
  4: call-appr                               9: call-appr
  5: call-appr                               10: brdg-appr  Btn: 10  Ext: 60012
    
```

Figure 4-16. Example Call Appearances (Ports 5– 11)

- For ports 1 through 4 and port 12, set all ten BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS to **call-appr**
- For ports 5 through 11, do the following:
  - a. Set the first nine BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS to **call-appr**
  - b. Set the tenth BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS to **brdg-appr Btn: 10 Ext: XXXX** where XXXX is the extension number of voice port 12.



**NOTE:**

Older switches do not allow you to duplicate ports with bridged appearances. If your switch doesn't allow this operation, remove the bridged appearance from port 5 before you duplicate it. Then add the bridged appearance when you administer each of the voice ports.

2. Continue with [Task 4-6C](#).

### Task 4-6C: Assigning the Feature Buttons

1. Press `NEXTPAGE`

The next page of the Station screen appears.

```

add station 60012                                     Page 4 of 5      SPE A
                                                    STATION
FEATURE BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS
1: lwc-store                                         13:
2: lwc-cancel                                       14:
3: aux-work      RC:      Grp: 150                 15:
4:                                                    16:
5:                                                    17:
6:                                                    18:
7:                                                    19:
8:                                                    20:
9:                                                    21:
10:                                                 22:
11:                                                 23:
12:                                                 24:
    
```

Figure 4-17. Example of a Feature Button Assignments Screen

2. Assign the following feature buttons on the FEATURE BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS portion of the Station screen:
  1. **lwc-store**
  2. **lwc-cancel**
  3. **aux-work RC: Grp: XXX**, where XXX is the number of the DEFINITY AUDIX Hunt Group assigned in [Task 4-3](#). Obtain the Hunt Group number from [Worksheet B-2](#).
  4. Continue with [Task 4-6D](#).

### Task 4-6D: Assigning the Display Buttons

1. Press `NEXTPAGE` until the DISPLAY BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS page appears.

```
change station 60012

                Page 5 of 5      SPE A

                                STATION

DISPLAY BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS

1: normal
2: inspect
3: date-time
4: directory
5: cov-msg-rt
6: next
7: delete-msg
```

Figure 4-18. Display Button Assignments Screen

2. Assign the display buttons on the Display Button Assignments screen as shown above.
3. Press **ENTER** to complete the Station screen.
4. Continue with [Task 4-6E](#).

### Task 4-6E: Duplicating the Stations

1. Duplicate port 12 using the duplicate function of your administration tool to create ports 1 through 5.  
For example, enter **duplicate station extension** where *extension* is the extension for voice port 12.
2. Type the Extension, Port and Name field for each voice port created.
3. Press **ENTER** to save the new voice ports.
4. For voice port 5, enter **change station extension**, where *extension* is the extension of the voice port.
5. Change the Restrict Last Appearance field to **n** ([Task 4-6A](#)), and bridge button 10 of voice port 5 to button 10 of voice port 12 ([Task 4-6B](#)).
6. Duplicate port 5 to create ports 6 through 11.

⇒ NOTE:

Older switches do not allow you to duplicate ports with bridged appearances. If your switch doesn't allow this operation, remove the bridged appearance from port 5 before you duplicate it. Then add the bridged appearance when you administer each of the voice ports in [Step 7](#).

7. Type the Extension, Port and Name field for these voice ports. Voice port 11 has the name AUDIX TRANSFER.
8. Press **ENTER** to save the new voice ports.
9. To verify that the voice ports exist on the switch, enter **list station xxxxx count y**

where xxxxx is the extension of voice port 1, and y is the number of ports you created.

For example, **list station 55555 count 12**.

⇒ NOTE:

This command works only if the voice port extensions are in sequence (for example, 84444, 84445, 84446, and so on). Otherwise, you may use **list station extension**.

10. Continue with [Task 4-7](#).

## Task 4-7: Assigning Voice Ports to the Hunt Group

---

The DEFINITY AUDIX system has an even-number of ports (between 2 and 12) purchased by the customer. Place the number of ports the customer purchased into a hunt group starting with port 1. For example, if the customer purchased four ports, place ports 1, 2, 3, and 4 into the hunt group. Do not assign more than the number of ports purchased to the hunt group since the DEFINITY AUDIX system answers calls only on ports configured for the system. If you assign more than the number of ports purchased, some calls to the DEFINITY AUDIX system will go unanswered.

⇒ NOTE:

The Transfer Into Mailbox feature works only if the DEFINITY AUDIX system voice ports cover to the DEFINITY AUDIX system hunt group.

⇒ NOTE:

As an option, you can run the Expert Agent Selection program to automatically set up the Hunt Group. Use the instructions in [Chapter 6, "Optional Switch Feature Administration"](#), [Continue with the Installation](#), instead of setting up the hunt group as described in this section.

To assign the voice ports to a hunt group, use the following procedure:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change hunt-group number** where *number* is the number of the hunt group you assigned in [Task 4-3](#).

The Hunt Group screen displays.

2. Press **(NEXTPAGE)** twice.

The switch displays the Group Member Assignments portion of the Hunt Group screen.

```
change hunt-group 150                                     Page 3 of 41      SPE B
                                                         HUNT GROUP
      Group Number: 150      Group Extension: 69999      Group Type: ucd
Member Range Allowed: 1 - 999      Administered Members (min/max): 1 /8
                                     Total Administered Members: 8

GROUP MEMBER ASSIGNMENTS
  Ext      Name
1: 60011   AUDIX 1
2: 60012   AUDIX 2
3: 60013   AUDIX 3
4: 60014   AUDIX 4
5: 60015   AUDIX 5
6: 60016   AUDIX 6
7: 60017   AUDIX 7
8: 60018   AUDIX 8
9: 60019   AUDIX 9
10:60020   AUDIX 10
11:60021   AUDIX TRANSFER
12:60022   AUDIX 12
13:
14:
15:
16:
17:
18:
19:
20:
21:
22:
23:
24:
25:
26:

At End of Member List
```

Figure 4-19. Example of the Hunt Group Screen — Group Member Assignments



**NOTE:**

The voice port names do not appear while you are adding the hunt group members. The next time you access this screen, the names will be displayed.

3. Use the entries in the table below to assign voice ports to a hunt group. Enter only the ports configured for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

**Table 4-12. Hunt Group Screen — Group Member Assignments Entries**

Field	Description
Group Number	Group number assigned on page 1 of the Hunt Group screen.
Group Extension	Group extension assigned on page 1 of the Hunt Group screen.
Group Type	Group type assigned on page 1 ( <b>ucd</b> ).
Ext	<p>The extensions of the DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports. Enter them in the same order they were assigned to the voice ports. The order must match the order on the DEFINITY AUDIX system Voice Group screen.</p> <p>Enter only the ports the customer purchased. For example, if the system has four configured ports, enter the extensions and names for ports 1, 2, 3, and 4. Obtain the extensions from <a href="#">Worksheet B-1</a>.</p>
Name	This is a display-only field. The voice port names are displayed the next time you access this screen.

4. Press **ENTER** to save the hunt group.
5. Write down the Group Number of the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group. You enter this number in other switch administration screens.
6. Continue with the first task that applies.
  - If installing digital networking, continue with [Task 4-8](#)
  - If the system has optional switch features, continue with [Chapter 6, "Optional Switch Feature Administration"](#).
  - If the system has no optional Switch Features, continue with [Chapter 5, "Initial Definity AUDIX Administration"](#).

## **Task 4-8: Administering the Digital Networking Port (Optional)**

Refer to the information you received from the design center when completing the switch administration.

### **NOTE:**

Digital networking is only possible with digital port emulation.

Before administering the Digital Networking port, you must know the extension of the first voice port for the local DEFINITY AUDIX system.

To administer the networking port:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change station extension**, where *extension* is the extension number of the first voice port.

The switch displays the first page of the Station screen.

2. Enter **y** in the Data Module field.

This adds a Data Module screen for the station.

3. Press **(NEXTPAGE)** until the Data Module screen displays.

```

change station 31001                                     Page 6 of 6      SPE B
                                                         STATION

DATA MODULE
  Data Extension: 31024          Name: networking port 1      BCC: 2
                                COS: 1
                                COR: 1
                                TN: 1
                                ITC: restricted

ABBREVIATED DIALING
  List:

SPECIAL DIALING OPTION

ASSIGNED MEMBER ( Station with a data extension button for this data module )

  Ext      Name
  1:
    
```

**Figure 4-20. Example of a Station Screen Data Module Page**

4. Change each of the following fields as indicated:

- Data Extension field - enter a unique extension from the switch dialing plan.
- Name field - enter a name that identifies the networking port.
- COR field - enter a value for COR in which:
  - Data Privacy = y
  - Calling party restriction = N
  - Called party restriction = N
  - The FRL is greater than or equal to the FRL of the trunk

4 Initial Switch Administration: G3r/R5r  
*Administering the Digital Networking Port (Optional)*

4-39

- COS field - enter the same value as you assigned to the voice ports.
5. Press **ENTER** to save the changes.
  6. See *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Digital Networking*, 585-300-534, Chapter 9, "Initial Network Administration and Acceptance Tests", for instructions to complete the switch administration for digital networking.
  7. Determine your next step:
    - If the system has optional switch features, continue with [Chapter 6, "Optional Switch Feature Administration"](#).
    - If the system has no optional Switch Features, continue with [Chapter 5, "Initial Definity AUDIX Administration"](#).

# Initial Definity AUDIX Administration

# 5

---

This chapter describes the initial tasks required to administer the DEFINITY AUDIX System.

The initial system administration tasks for the DEFINITY AUDIX system are:

[Task 5-1 - "Perform Initial DEFINITY AUDIX Administration"](#)

[Task 5-2 - "Activate Parameters and Basic Features"](#)

[Task 5-3 - "Add Magneto-Optical Disks"](#)

[Task 5-4 - "Check the Status of the Switch Names Audit"](#)

[Task 5-5 - "Check Alarm Status"](#)

## Worksheets Needed

Before beginning these tasks, make sure you have completed the following worksheets (included as appendices).

- [Worksheet B-1: Administer the Voice Ports as Stations \(Digital Port Emulation\)](#)
- [Worksheet B-2: Assign the Hunt Group \(Digital Port Emulation\)](#)
- [Worksheet B-3: Assign the Call Coverage Path for Voice Ports \(Digital Port Emulation\)](#)
- [Worksheet B-4: Assign the Call Coverage Path for Subscribers \(Digital Port Emulation\)](#)
- [Worksheet C-3: Assign the DEFINITY AUDIX Machine ID](#)
- [Worksheet C-5: Set System Parameters Limits](#)
- [Worksheet C-6: Assign the Time Zone](#)
- [Worksheet C-7: Activate Parameters and Basic Features](#)
- [Worksheet C-8: Add Subscribers](#)

- [Worksheet C-9: Set Up Alarm Origination](#)

## Task 5-1: Perform Initial DEFINITY AUDIX Administration

---

The initial DEFINITY AUDIX administration tasks are:

- [Set the DEFINITY AUDIX Clock](#)
- [Assign the Time Zone](#)
- [Assign the DEFINITY AUDIX Machine Parameters](#)
- [Run the Switch Translations Audit](#)
- [Administer Voice Ports](#)
- [Set Switch-Link Parameters](#)
- [Set System Parameters Limits](#)
- [Set System Parameters for INTUITY Message Manager](#)
- [Reboot the DEFINITY AUDIX System](#)
- [Run the Switch Names Audit](#)

### Task 5-1A: Set the DEFINITY AUDIX Clock

1. At the login prompt, enter **craft**  
The system displays the Password prompt.
2. Enter **crftpw**  
The system displays the Enter terminal type prompt.
3. Enter one of the following:
  - 513 for the following terminals:
    - 513 BCT
    - 715 BCT
    - 610BCT with a 513 emulation package
    - 615 BCT with a 513 emulation package
    - PC with a 513 emulation package



#### NOTE:

Since 513 is the default, you can just press **(RETURN)** to select it.

- 4410 for the following terminals:
  - 4410

- 5410 terminal
- 610 BCT with a 4410 emulation package.
- 615 BCT with a 4410 emulation package.
- PC with a 4410 emulation package.
- 4425 for the following terminals:
  - 4425
  - 5425
- 5420 for the following terminals:
  - 5420
  - 4415
- g3-ma for a G3-MA terminal

The system displays the DEFINITY AUDIX command line.

4. Type **set time** and press **(RETURN)**.

The system displays the Date and Time screen.

```
drmf15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
set time Page 1 of 1
DATE AND TIME
Synchronize to Switch? y
Month: December Day of the Month: 29
Year: 1998
Time: 14:45
Synchronize to Switch Result:
enter command: set time
```

Figure 5-1. Date and Time screen

5 Initial Definity AUDIX Administration  
Perform Initial DEFINITY AUDIX Administration

5-4

5. Move the cursor to the `Month` field and type the name (not the number) of the current month.
6. Move the cursor to the `Day of the Month` field and type the two digits of the current day of the month (not the day of the week). For example, type **08** if the current date is April 8.
7. Move the cursor to the `Year` field and type the full four digits of the current year.
8. Move the cursor to the `Time` field and type the current time in an `hh:mm` format (`hh` specifies the hour in military (24 hour) time, and `mm` specifies the minutes).
9. With the cursor at the `Synchronize to Switch` field, type **y**

 **NOTE:**

If the switch clock does not display the correct time, set the switch clock before performing this task. See the appropriate switch document for the procedure to set the switch clock.

10. Press `F3` (Enter) to save the changes.
11. Continue with [Task 5-1B](#).

### Task 5-1B: Assign the Time Zone

Use the information on [Worksheet C-6](#) to perform this task.

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **change switch-time-zone** and press `RETURN`.

The system displays the Switch Time Zone screen

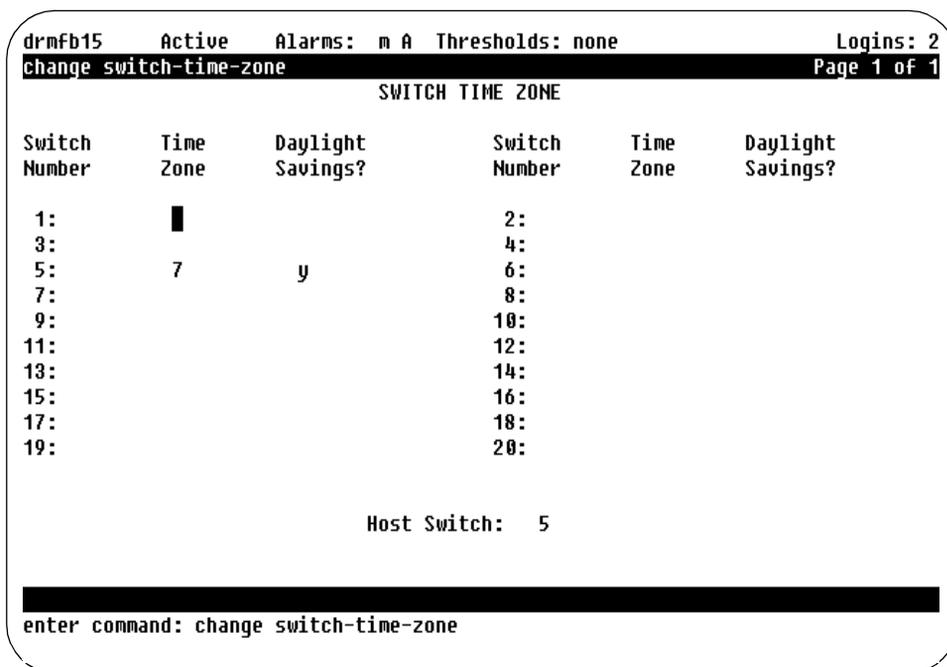


Figure 5-2. Switch Time Zone Screen

If the time zones of your associated switches have not been defined for your AUDIX system, only the columns of switch numbers appear. Complete [Step 2](#) and [Step 3](#) below for those switches that are part of your DEFINITY communications system network.

2. In the Time Zone column, enter a number that indicates how many time zones west of Greenwich, England, the indicated switch is located. In the screen above, the prime meridian introduces time zone zero, and time zone 7 is U.S. mountain time.
3. In the Daylight Savings column, enter **y** if the indicated switch is located in a region where daylight savings time is observed. Daylight saving time is observed if the time is adjusted by an hour in April and October to take advantage of more sunlight. If daylight savings time is not observed, enter **n** in this column.
4. Press **⏎** (Enter) to save the changes.

**⇒ NOTE:**

Changes in these values will not take effect until you reboot the system.

- Continue with [Task 5-1C](#).

### Task 5-1C: Assign the DEFINITY AUDIX Machine Parameters

Use information from [Worksheet C-3](#) to complete this task.

- With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **change machine**

The system displays the Machine Profile screen.

```

drmf15      Active      Alarms: m A  Thresholds: none      Logins: 2
change machine                                     Page 1 of 1
                MACHINE PROFILE

Machine Name: drmf15      Machine Type: audix      Location: local

Voiced Name? n      Extension Length: 5
Voice ID: 0          Default Community: 1

ADDRESS RANGES
  Prefix          Start Ext.  End Ext.    Warnings
1:
2:
3:
4:
5:
6:
7:
8:
9:
10:

enter command: change machine
    
```

Figure 5-3. Machine Profile screen

- Move the cursor to the Machine Name field and type the new name to be assigned to this DEFINITY AUDIX system. The machine name must be from one to eight characters in length.
- Verify that the Machine Type field displays `audix`. If not, move the cursor to that field and type `audix`
- Move the cursor to the Extension Length field and type the number of digits that the extensions on this DEFINITY AUDIX system will have.

5 Initial Definity AUDIX Administration  
*Perform Initial DEFINITY AUDIX Administration*

5-7

5. Move the cursor to the ADDRESS RANGES fields, and fill in the starting and ending switch extensions that will have coverage on this DEFINITY AUDIX system.
6. For the remaining fields, change only the fields whose values on [Worksheet C-3](#) are different from the default.
7. Press the **F3** (Enter) function key to save the changes.

 **NOTE:**

If you are activating IMAPI, the LAN will not recognize the machine name until you reboot the system in [Task 5-1I](#).

8. Continue with [Task 5-1D](#).

### Task 5-1D: Run the Switch Translations Audit

The switch translations audit examines and updates internal data used by the switch interface.

This audit takes a few seconds. Run the audit as described below.

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **audit switch-translations** and press **RETURN**.

The system displays the Audit Results screen:

```
drnfb15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
audit switch-translations
                                AUDIT RESULTS                                Date: 12/29/98 14:53
                                Audit Name                                Result
                                Audit Switch Xlatins P Passed

Command Successfully Completed
enter command: █
```

Figure 5-4. Audit Results Screen

2. Press **F3** (Enter) to begin the audit.
3. When the audit is complete, proceed to [Task 5-1E](#). If the audit does not complete successfully, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance* book, 585-300-121, to troubleshoot the problem.
4. Continue with [Task 5-1E](#).

### Task 5-1E: Administer Voice Ports

The voice ports and extensions that you administer in this task must match the ports and extensions that you administered on the switch. See [Worksheet B-1](#) for the correct values.



**CAUTION:**

If you administered a digital networking port in [Chapter 4](#), you can only administer a maximum of 8 voice ports in this task, even if you administered 12 ports on the switch.

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **change voice-group** and press **(RETURN)**.

The system displays the Voice Group screen.

```
drnfb15 Active Alarms: n A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
change voice-group Page 1 of 1
VOICE GROUP

Member Port Extension Member Port Extension
1 C1C0601 64001 2 01C0602 64002
3 01C0603 64003 4 01C0604 64004
5 01C0605 64005 6 01C0606 64006
7 01C0607 64007 8 01C0608 64008
9 01C0609 64009 10 01C0610 64010
11 01C0611 64011 12 01C0612 64012

enter command: change voice-group
```

Figure 5-5. Voice Group Screen

2. With the cursor at the Port field, type the location identifier of the first port. The first two digits identify the switch cabinet, the third digit identifies the carrier, the fourth and fifth digit identify the slot number, and the last two digits identify the port number. For example, if the DEFINITY AUDIX system board is in module 1, carrier C, slot 6, the first port location is 01C0601.
3. Move the cursor to the Extension field and type the extension number of the first port.
4. Repeat Steps 2 and 3 for each port the customer purchased. Following the example in Step 2, the second port location is 01C0602, and so forth.
5. Press **F3** (Enter) to save the changes.
6. Continue with [Task 5-1F](#).

## Task 5-1F: Set Switch-Link Parameters

Perform the following steps for DS integration:

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **change switch-link** and press **RETURN**.

The system displays the “Switch Link Embedded” screen. This screen is used to establish two conditions:

- Which AUDIX system is to be integrated into which switch
- How a call is to be treated when the call answer timeout period expires.

```
change subscriber 32322
change switch-link                                     Page 1 of 1
                SWITCH LINK EMBEDDED
                Host Switch: 1_   AUDIX: 2_
TIMEOUT PARAMETERS
Call Answer Timeout: 5_   Timeout Treatment: none_   Extension: _____

Command aborted
enter command: change switch-link
```

Figure 5-6. Switch-Link Embedded Screen

2. In the `Host Switch` field, type the switch number assigned to the switch into which the AUDIX system is installed.

**⇒ NOTE:**

If you do not know the switch number, enter **display dialplan** at the switch terminal. The `Local Node Number` field on the Dial Plan screen displays the switch number.

5 Initial Definity AUDIX Administration  
Perform Initial DEFINITY AUDIX Administration

5-11

3. In the `AUDIX` field, type the machine number of the AUDIX system being installed.
4. In the `Call Answer Timeout` field, type the number of seconds the system will wait for touch-tone digits when it answers a call without receiving a “connect” message.
5. In the `Call Answer Timeout` field, type the way a call is to be handled when the timeout period expires:
  - Enter **none** if the call is to be disconnected.
  - Enter **mailbox** if the call is to be transferred to a mailbox.
  - Enter **transfer** if the call is to be transferred to an extension.
6. Finally, in the `Extension` field, type the number of the mailbox or extension to which a call is to be transferred after it has timed out.

You may leave this field blank if you typed *none* in [Step 5](#).
7. Press `F3` (Enter) to save the changes.
8. Proceed to [Task 5-1G](#).

### Task 5-1G: Set System Parameters Limits

This task is required only if the customer wants to use subscriber limits that are different from the defaults. Check [Worksheet C-5](#) to determine if you need to change the system parameters limits. If not, determine the next step:

- If INTUITY Message Manager was purchased, continue with [Task 5-1H](#).
- If INTUITY Message Manager was not purchased, continue with [Task 5-1I](#).

If changes are indicated on the worksheet, perform the following steps.

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **change system-parameters limits** and press `RETURN`.

The system displays the System-Parameters Limits screen.

```
drmfB15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
change system-parameters limits Page 1 of 1
SYSTEM-PARAMETERS LIMITS

MESSAGE LIMITS
Message Lengths, Maximum (seconds): 1200 Minimum (tenths of seconds): 10
Messages, Total In All Mailboxes: 50000 Awaiting Delivery: 5000

ADMINISTRATION LIMITS
Subscribers, Local: 1000 Administered Remote: 1000
Lists, Total Entries: 50000 Lists/Subscriber: 100 Recipients/List: 250

LOG LIMITS
Admin Log Entries: 1000

enter command: change system-parameters limits
```

Figure 5-7. System-Parameters Limits Screen

2. Move the cursor to each of the fields that is to be changed according to [Worksheet C-5](#), and type the new system parameters limits.
3. Once you have changed all the fields, press **(F3)** (Enter) to save the changes.
4. Determine your next step:
  - If INTUITY Message Manager was purchased, continue with [Task 5-1H](#).
  - If INTUITY Message Manager was not purchased, continue with [Task 5-1I](#).

### Task 5-1H: Set System Parameters for INTUITY Message Manager

This task is required to activate and install the LAN options that allow INTUITY Message Manager to work.

1. Inform the LAN system administrator to add the AUDIX host name to the network domain name server. This allows users to access DEFINITY AUDIX by name when addressing the AUDIX system.

2. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **change system-parameters IMAPI-options**

The system displays the System-Parameters IMAPI-Options screen.

**⇒ NOTE:**

The System Parameters IMAPI-Options screen cannot be accessed if INTUITY Message Manager was not purchased.

```
drnfb15 Active Alarms: n A Thresholds: none Login:
change system-parameters imapi-options Page 1
SYSTEM-PARAMETERS IMAPI-OPTIONS

Maximum Number of ENABLED IMAPI Sessions: 32
Enable Check New Messages: y
Enable Deliver CA Message: n
Enable Voice File Transfer: y
IMAPI Session Timeout: 5
LAN IP Address: 135.9.180.18
LAN Subnet Mask: 255.255.255.0
Default LAN Gateway IP Address: 135.9.180.254
Link Integrity: y
enter command: change system-parameters imapi-options
```

Figure 5-8. System-Parameters IMAPI-Options Screen

3. Move the cursor to the Maximum Number of ENABLED IMAPI Sessions field. The value in this field should be 32
4. Move the cursor to the Enable Check New Messages field. Type y. This allows clients to check for new messages without the overhead of logging in. If left at n, automatic new message notification from INTUITY Message Manager is disabled.
5. Leave the value of the Enable Deliver CA Message field as n. Entering y enables the public class-of-service function.
6. Move the cursor to the Enable Voice File Transfer field. Enter y to enable the use of the personal folder and a sound card in INTUITY Message Manager and also to enable voice file transfer for all subscribers who have IMAPI Voice File Transfer enabled.

5 Initial Definity AUDIX Administration  
Perform Initial DEFINITY AUDIX Administration

5-14

7. Move the cursor to the `IMAPI Session Timeout` field. This is the amount of time that a session can be inactive before the user is logged out of the mailbox. Intervals can be set in five-minute increments from 5 to 60 minutes. Leave it at **5**. After logging out, the user will have an active TCP/IP connection to the AUDIX server for 5 minutes.
8. Do not change the value in the `LAN IP Address` field. This is the IP address assigned to the AUDIX server by the LAN administrator.
9. Obtain the subnet mask number from the LAN administrator. Move the cursor to the `LAN Subnet Mask` field and type in a subnet mask number. Part of this number matches the network IP address, while the remaining part contains the host interface address. (Usually, `255.255.255.0` will work.)
10. Move the cursor to the `Default LAN Gateway IP Address` field and type in the default LAN gateway IP address. This is the LAN server address to which all unknown addresses will be sent for resolution. It is also supplied by the LAN administrator and has the same form as the LAN IP Address and subnet mask number.
11. Press `F3` (Enter) to save the changes.
12. When the IP, Subnet mask, and Gateway IP address fields are set, a call must be made to the underlying TCP/IP software to assign these numbers to the interface.
13. If you changed either the customer or IMAPI option settings, reboot the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
14. Continue with [Task 5-1I](#).

### Task 5-1I: Reboot the DEFINITY AUDIX System

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **reset system reboot** and press `RETURN`.

The system displays the Reset System Reboot screen.

```
drmfbb15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
reset system reboot Page 1 of 1
RESET SYSTEM REBOOT

WARNING - Pressing [Enter] now causes the system to be rebooted to the AUDIX
state. The reboot cannot be cancelled after [Enter] has been pressed.

The reboot will be performed in a camp-on manner.

Press [Cancel] to avoid doing the reboot.

enter command: reset system reboot
```

Figure 5-9. Reset System Reboot Screen

2. Press **F3** (Enter) to begin the reboot.

During the DEFINITY AUDIX system reboot, the LEDs indicate the various system states and the terminal screen displays a series of messages about the reboot. These messages include a login prompt, but do not log in yet.

3. Wait approximately 10 minutes for the DEFINITY AUDIX system to come up to the AUDIX state.
4. When the screen displays the following message,

```
OLDTRACELOG=/var/spool/audix/oldtrace
```

press **F3** (Enter) to display the login prompt.

5. Login as **craft**.

See [Task 5-1A](#) for the login procedure.

If the system has completed the reboot, the Status line on the screen displays **audix**; if the system is still booting, the Status line displays **Initializing to AUDIX**. (You cannot continue until the Status line changes to **audix**.)

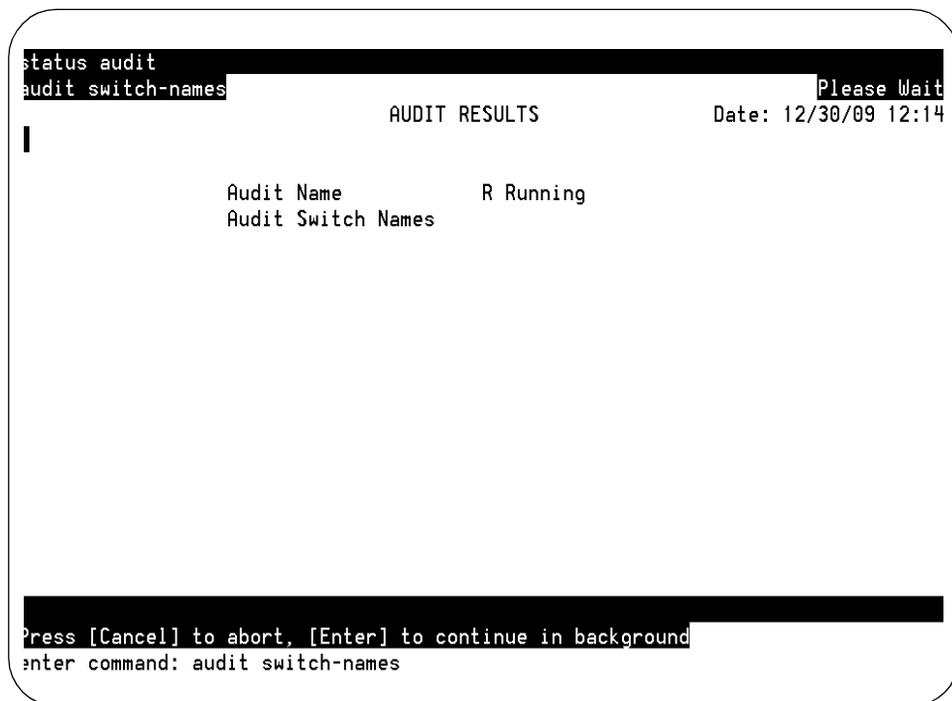
6. Once the reboot completes successfully, proceed to [Task 5-1J](#). If the reboot does not complete successfully, note the state indicated on the LEDs, and see the corresponding troubleshooting procedures in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121, before continuing.

### Task 5-1J: Run the Switch Names Audit

The Switch Names audit uploads the names-to-extensions database from the switch. The Switch Names audit could take from 5 minutes to 1 hour, depending on the size of the database.

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **audit switch-names** and press `RETURN`.

The system displays the Switch Names Audix screen.



```
status audit
audit switch-names Please Wait
                AUDIT RESULTS                Date: 12/30/09 12:14
|
                Audit Name                R Running
                Audit Switch Names

Press [Cancel] to abort, [Enter] to continue in background
enter command: audit switch-names
```

Figure 5-10. Switch Names Audit Screen

2. Press `F3` (Enter) to begin the audit.
3. Press `F3` (Enter) again to have the audit run in the background.

4. Because of the possible long duration of this task, complete the remaining administration tasks and then check the status of this audit as described in [Task 5-4](#).
5. Continue with [Task 5-2](#).

## Task 5-2: Activate Parameters and Basic Features

This task is required if the customer indicates specific features to be activated. Check [Worksheet C-7](#) to see if any features are to be activated. If no features are to be activated, skip to [Task 5-3](#).

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **change system-parameters features** and press **RETURN**.

The system displays the System-Parameters Features screen

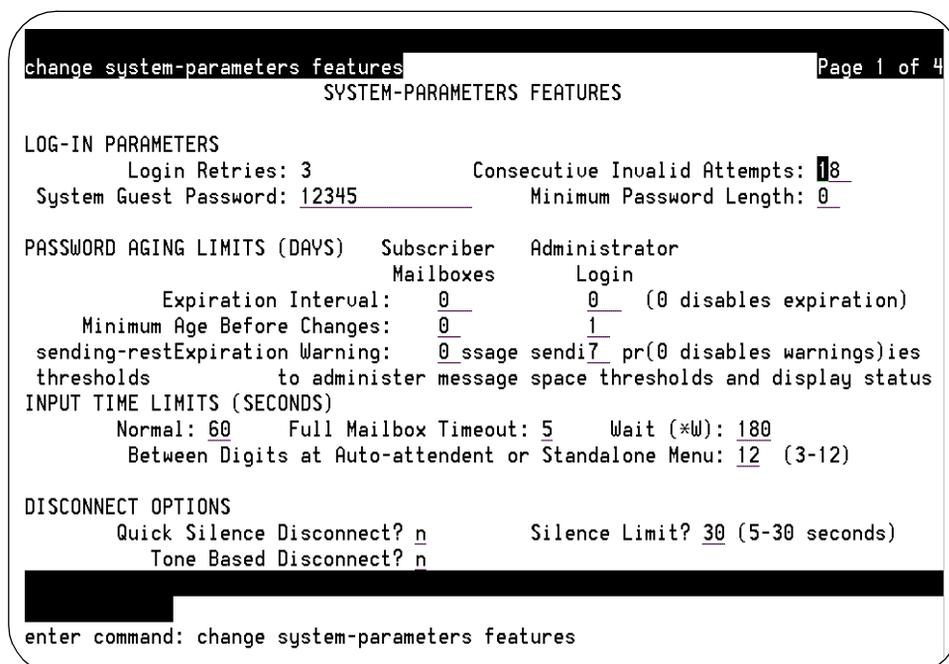


Figure 5-11. System-Parameters Features Screen

2. Move the cursor to any of the fields to be changed on the first page. Use the information on [Worksheet C-7](#) to type the values specified.

3. Press **F7** (Next Page) to display page two of this screen.

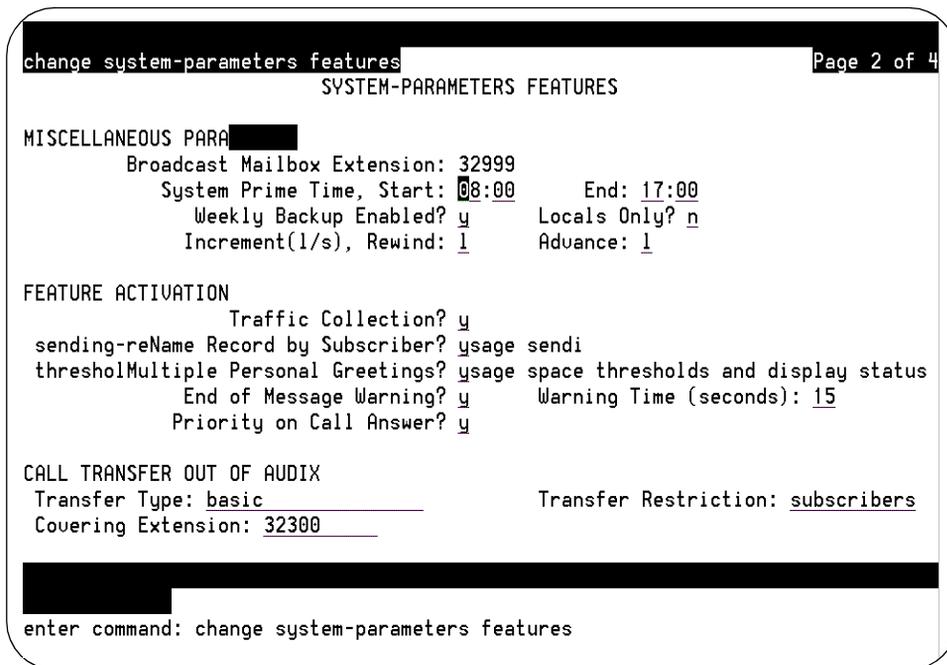


Figure 5-12. System-Parameters Features Screen (page 2)

4. Move the cursor to any of the features to be activated on page 2 and enter the appropriate data as specified on the worksheet.
5. Press **F7** (Next Page) to display page three of this screen.

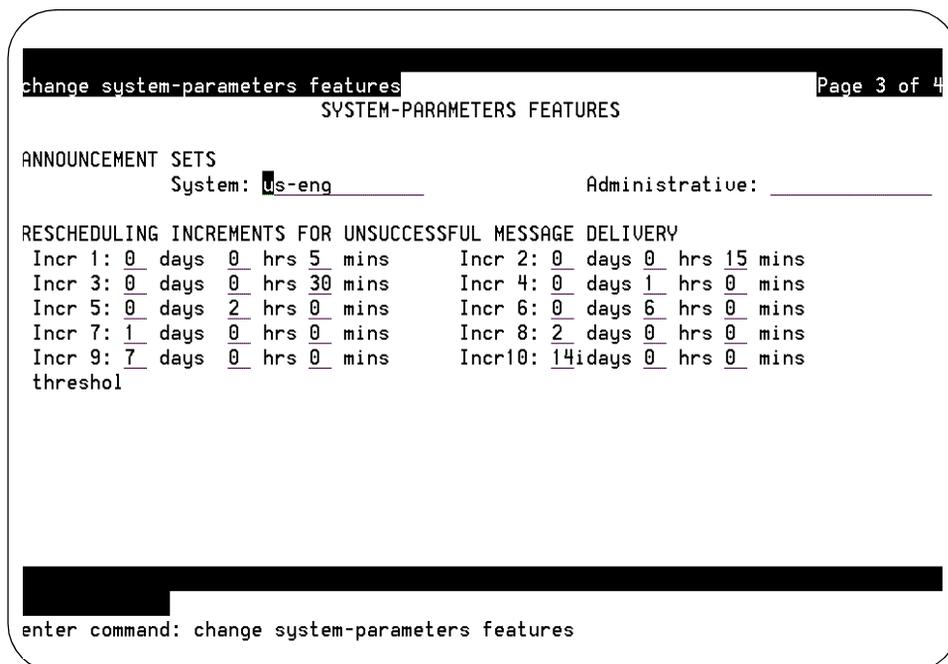


Figure 5-13. System-Parameters Features Screen (page 3)

6. Move the cursor to any of the fields and change announcement sets or change rescheduling increments as needed.
7. When you have completed all the changes, press **(F3)** (Enter) to save the changes.
8. Press **(F3)** (Enter) again.
9. If any of the features that you just activated require special administration as specified on [Worksheet C-7](#), see the appropriate tasks in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration, 585-300-507*, for details.
10. Proceed to [Task 5-3](#).

## Task 5-3: Add Magneto-Optical Disks

The DEFINITY AUDIX system order included two blank magneto-optical disk cartridges. In [Task 2-5](#), you gave one of these disk cartridges to the system administrator or put it in a safe place for nightly backups. You should still have the second blank disk cartridge. This cartridge is for the first nightly backup.

1. Referring to [Figure 5-14](#), insert the blank disk cartridge into the magneto-optical disk drive with the front face to the left.

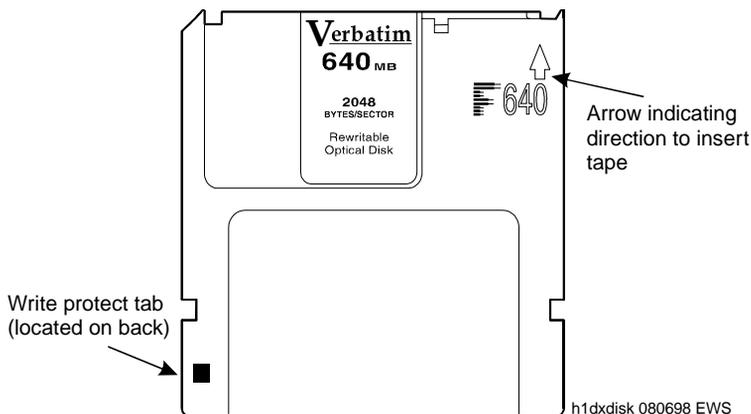


Figure 5-14. Magneto-Optical Disk Cartridge

- At the terminal, type **add mo-disk** and press `RETURN`.  
 The system displays the MO-Disk screen.

```

drmf15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
add mo-disk Page 1 of 1
MO-DISK

MO-Disk Drive Location: 01C0602

Volume Type: backup

Volume Name:

Software Release: Release 4.0, Issue 1

Machine Name: drmf15

Creation Date: 11/17/98

Status of most recent "add mo-disk" operation: not run

Press [ENTER] to execute or press [CANCEL] to abort
enter command: add mo-disk
    
```

Figure 5-15. MO-Disk Screen

- With the cursor on the `Volume Name` field, type the name of the backup.

5 Initial Definity AUDIX Administration

Check the Status of the Switch Names Audit

5-21

4. Press **F3** (Enter).

The Message line displays the following message.

```
This operation erases all existing mo-disk data.  
Press "ENTER" to confirm.
```

5. Press **F3** (Enter) to begin the add mo-disk function.

If you are adding an unformatted MO disk, this step could take up to 10 minutes. You will verify the status of the add mo-disk function in [Task 10-1](#).

6. Continue with [Task 5-4](#).

## **Task 5-4: Check the Status of the Switch Names Audit**

---

The purpose of this task is to check the status of the switch names audit operation initiated in [Task 5-1J](#).

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **status audit** and press **RETURN**.

The system displays the Audit Results screen showing the result of the most recently run audit.

```
change system-parameters maintenance
status audit

                                AUDIT RESULTS                                Date:
                                12/30/09 12:20

Audit Name                      Result
Audit Switch Names              P Passed

Command aborted
Command Success
```

Figure 5-16. Audit Results Screen

2. Check the Result field for the Switch Names audit. If it displays Passed, proceed to the next step. If it displays Running, wait a few minutes and repeat Step 1. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 until the audit screen displays Passed, then proceed with the next step.

If the audit does not complete successfully, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121 for instructions to troubleshoot this problem.

3. If the audit passes, type **display administration-log** at the DEFINITY AUDIX command line and press **RETURN**.

The system displays the Administration Log screen.

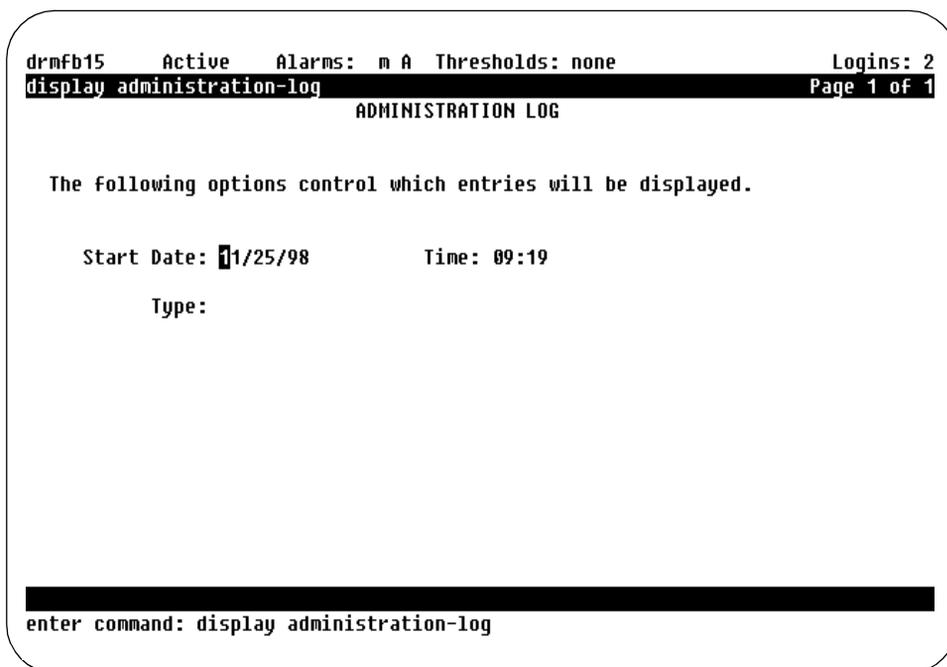


Figure 5-17. Administration Log Screen

Press **F4** (Clear Field) to clear the Start Date, Time, and Type fields on page 1. Press **F3** (Enter) to display the Administration-Log entries on page 2 of the screen.

4. Check the log for entries that indicate that the Switch Names audit found one or more non-unique subscriber names.

If the DEFINITY AUDIX system has subscribers with non-unique subscriber names, the DEFINITY AUDIX system will answer in *stand-alone* mode for these subscribers (requiring the caller to reenter the subscribers' extension). In addition, each time the Switch Names audit runs (at least nightly), it will write an entry in the Administration log for each non-unique subscriber name. This repeated entry can quickly fill up the log file.

If the Switch Names audit finds 50 or more non-unique subscriber names, the entire switch names database is discarded and the DEFINITY AUDIX system will answer in *stand-alone* mode for *all* subscribers. This condition is indicated by an entry in the Administration Log.

For a description of the restrictions on subscriber names, see [Task 9-1](#) in [Chapter 9](#).

5. To find non-unique names using the G3-MA screen, perform the following (optional) steps:

- a. Connect to the switch and select the data-management option from the main menu.
  - b. Create a template by using the **add data-template name** command.
  - c. Retrieve the data and sort it using the name as the key.
  - d. Use the print out to locate duplicate names.
6. Inform the switch system administrator of any non-unique subscribers in the administration log. Ask the administrator to change all non-unique subscriber names in the switch names database to unique names.
  7. After the system administrator has changed the non-unique subscriber names in the switch names database, repeat [Task 5-1J](#) and Steps 1-5 of [Task 5-4](#).

When you display the Display Administration-Log screen, the default values for Start Date and Time on page 1 are the date and time the screen was last run. To display only the new log entries, use these default values.

If more non-unique subscriber names are found, again ask the switch system administrator to change all non-unique subscriber names in the switch names database. Repeat [Task 5-1J](#) and [Task 5-4](#) until no non-unique names are found.

8. Once the Switch Names audit runs without creating entries for non-unique subscriber names in the administration log, continue with [Task 5-5](#).

## **Task 5-5: Check Alarm Status**

---

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **display alarms** and press **RETURN**.

The system displays the Alarm Report screen.

```
drnfb15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
display alarms Page 1 of 1
ALARM REPORT

The following options control which alarms will be displayed.

ALARM TYPES
Active?  Resolved? n
Major? y Minor? y Warning? y

Start Date: / / Time: :

Resource Type: Location: Fault code:

enter command: display alarms
```

Figure 5-18. Alarm Report Screen

2. Check the ALARM TYPES fields for any active alarms. To do so, type **y** in each of the following fields:
  - Active
  - Major
  - Minor
  - Warning
3. Press **(F3)** (Enter) to display the active alarms.
4. Resolve all active alarms. See *DEFINITY AUDIX System—Maintenance* book, 585-300-121, for the procedures for identifying and resolving the alarms.

## Optional Switch Feature Administration

# 6

---

This chapter describes the optional switch administration for the DEFINITY AUDIX system that may be needed to tailor the DEFINITY AUDIX system to specific customer requirements. The following options are described:

- [Automated Attendant Administration](#)

An Automated Attendant is a DEFINITY AUDIX system feature that provides the caller with a menu of options. The caller then can request a department or extension, for example, by pressing a touch tone key. An Automated Attendant extension and, optionally, a hunt group must be administered on the switch. The Automated Attendant extension should cover immediately to the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group defined in [Task 4-7](#).

- [Automated Attendant Substitute Strategies](#)

A substitute for the automated attendant is needed so that calls do not go unanswered when the DEFINITY AUDIX system is busy.

- [Switch Recorded Announcement](#)

This feature allows an attendant or other party to transfer a caller back to the DEFINITY AUDIX system to record a message. This feature is useful when the caller is either sent to coverage or otherwise redirected from DEFINITY AUDIX.

- [Switch Recorded Announcement](#)

This announcement is heard when all the DEFINITY AUDIX system voice ports are busy and calls start entering the system queue. Additional hardware is needed to activate this option.

- [Switch Multiple Coverage Paths](#)

Multiple coverage paths provide greater flexibility for call-answer treatment and must be administered on the switch.

- [Listed Directory Number \(LDN\) Night Destination](#)

The DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group can receive calls to listed directory numbers when the switch is in night service mode.

- [Continue with the Installation](#)

The DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group can be administered for EAS. EAS allows switch measurement data to be collected for each voice port.

## Worksheets Needed

Before beginning these tasks, make sure you have completed the following worksheets (included as appendices).

- [Worksheet D-2: Automated Attendant](#)
- [Worksheet D-5: Administering Switch Recorded Announcement](#)

## Automated Attendant Administration

Automated Attendant is a DEFINITY AUDIX system feature that provides the caller with a voice menu of options. The caller then can press a touch tone key to select an option such as a department or extension. Procedures for administering an automated attendant at the switch vary depending on whether the switch is a System 75 R1V3, a DEFINITY G1, or a DEFINITY Generic 3. Use the procedures described in this section to administer an automated attendant at the switch.

### Generic 3, Version 2 and Greater Switches

With Generic 3, Version 2 and greater switches, you can either assign a phantom station on the switch for each main attendant or assign a new hunt group that forwards calls to the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group.

### Assigning a Phantom Station

Assign a phantom station on Generic 3, Version 2 for each main attendant. These switches do not require a physical port for a phantom station, but a switch alarm is not generated when a physical voice terminal is absent.

Use the following procedure to assign a phantom station for a main attendant.

1. Complete a station screen for the phantom station using **add station xxxx** or **add station next** (see [Task 4-6](#) in [Chapter 4](#) for details). Obtain the station type and extension number from [Worksheet D-2](#). In the `Port` field, enter `x` to indicate that there is not a physical voice terminal associated with the port assignment. For further information, refer to the appropriate switch implementation manual.
2. Assign the phantom extension (from Step 1) as the incoming destination for the incoming call trunk groups that will be served by the automated attendant. If you are not using the automated attendant as an incoming destination for a trunk group, go to the next step.

3. From the attendant console (or administrative voice terminal), activate Call Forwarding All Calls for the automated attendant extension. Make the destination the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group extension.
4. Run the Switch Names Audit from the DEFINITY AUDIX system if the system is administered in DS integration. Refer to *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration* (585-300-507) for instructions on running a Switch Names Audit.

## Assigning a Hunt Group

Assign a new hunt group for the automated attendant if there is not a physical port available on the switch for a station. The hunt group forwards calls to the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group. Use the following procedure to assign a hunt group for the automated attendant.

1. Enter **add hunt group number**. Obtain the number from [Worksheet D-2](#).
  - a. Set `Group Name` to a name that contains the group extension. The group name can be the group extension, or the group extension can be embedded in the group name.
  - b. Set `Group Extension` to the automated attendant extension on the worksheet.
  - c. Set `Group Type` to **ucd** (G3V1-V4/R5), or **ucd-mia** (G3R6 or greater)
  - d. Leave `Coverage Path` blank for best operation, because all calls are forwarded to the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group extension.
  - e. Set the other fields according to the customer requirements.
  - f. Set `Queue?` to **n**



### NOTE:

Do not assign any members to this hunt group.

- g. Press `ENTER`.
2. Assign the automated attendant group extension (from Step 1) as the incoming destination for the incoming call trunk groups that will be served by the automated attendant. If you are not using the automated attendant as an incoming destination for a trunk group, make sure `Auth Code?` is set to **n**.
3. From the attendant console or administrative voice terminal, activate Call Forwarding All Calls for the automated attendant extension. Make the destination the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group extension.

## Night Service to an Automated Attendant

You can set up night service to an automated attendant from an incoming trunk or from a Listed Directory Number (LDN).

 **NOTE:**

There is another way to route calls automatically by time of day. Refer to *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration (585-300-507)*, Chapter 9, “Automated Attendant,” for this alternative procedure. The Automated Attendant Routing Table and the Business and Holiday Schedule allow you to set up night service for the DEFINITY AUDIX Release 3.2 and later.

## From an Incoming Trunk

Use the following procedure to set up night service to an automated attendant from an incoming trunk.

1. Assign the night automated attendant extension or hunt group number to the `Night Service` field on the trunk group screen. The night automated attendant receives all incoming calls when night service is activated.
2. Activate Call Forwarding All Calls for the night automated attendant extension or hunt group number. Make the destination the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group extension.

While the console is in day service mode, calls are routed as usual according to the incoming destination on the trunk group screen. When the console is placed in night service mode, calls are routed according to the night automated attendant destination identified in the `Night Service` field.

## From a Listed Directory Number (LDN)

Use the following procedure to set up night service to an automated attendant from an LDN.

1. Enter **change listed-directory-numbers** to assign an extension or extensions on the Listed Directory Numbers screen. The extension(s) must not exist elsewhere in the switch.
2. For each extension assigned in Step 1, assign a name that includes the night automated attendant extension or hunt group number as part of the name.
3. Assign the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group extension in the `Night Destination` field.

When the attendant console is in day service mode, the LDN acts as usual. When the attendant console is placed in night service mode, calls are sent to the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group extension and are answered by the automated attendant that corresponds to the number in the `LDN name` field.

## Automated Attendant Substitute Strategies

---

A substitute for an automated attendant is needed so that calls do not go unanswered when the DEFINITY AUDIX system is busy or unavailable.

This section contains suggestions for providing a substitute for an automated attendant. Consult the appropriate switch documents for details and interactions with other features. Each DEFINITY AUDIX system installation will have to be tailored individually.

### Generic 3, Release 5, and Newer Switches

For Generic 3, Version 2 or greater switches, either a phantom station or a hunt group was assigned to access the automated attendant. If a phantom station was assigned, activate the Call Vector feature to send calls somewhere else, such as the operator or recorded announcement, if the DEFINITY AUDIX system is unavailable.

If a hunt group was assigned and the DEFINITY AUDIX system is unavailable, use the attendant console to change the destination of Call Forwarding from the DEFINITY AUDIX system to a live attendant (for example, forward calls to LDN). When the DEFINITY AUDIX system becomes available, reactivate forwarding to the DEFINITY AUDIX system extension. Another option is to change the incoming destination to go to a recorded announcement while the automated attendant is out of service (see the optional feature, "[Switch Recorded Announcement](#)", in this chapter).

## Switch Recorded Announcement

The following procedure is used to provide a recorded announcement at the switch for anyone who accesses the DEFINITY AUDIX system, either through a direct call or through call redirection. The announcement is heard when all the DEFINITY AUDIX system voice ports are busy and calls start entering the DEFINITY AUDIX system queue. Refer to [Worksheet D-5](#) for the information required to administer this feature.

**⇒ NOTE:**

A TN750 Announcement circuit pack must be installed on the switch or a customer-provided external system must be wired to a vacant analog port for this feature to work.

The figure below shows the Recorded Announcements Screen for Generic 3r. The administration screen may look slightly different for other switches or switch releases.

change announcements										Page 1 of 8		SPE A		
ANNOUNCEMENTS/AUDIO SOURCES														
Ext.	Type	COR	TN	Name	Q	QLen	Pro	Rate	Port					
1:	32101	integrated	1	1	hunt 100	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
2:	32102	integrated	1	1	vector 2	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
3:	32103	integrated	1	1	vector 3	y	N/A	n	64	03D19				
4:	32104	integrated	1	1	vector 4	y	N/A	n	64	03D19				
5:	32105	integ-rep	1	1	vector 5	y	N/A	n	64	03D19				
6:	32106	integrated	1	1	vector 6	y	N/A	n	64	03D19				
7:	32107	integrated	1	1	vector 7	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
8:	32108	integrated	1	1	vector 8	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
9:	32109	integrated	1	1	vector 9	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
10:	32110	integrated	1	1	vector 10	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
11:	32111	integrated	1	1	vector 11	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
12:	32112	integrated	1	1	vector 12	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
13:	32113	integrated	1	1	vector 13	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
14:	32114	integrated	1	1	vector 14	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
15:	32115	integrated	1	1	vector 15	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				
16:	32116	integrated	1	1	vector 16	y	N/A	n	32	03D19				

Figure 6-1. Example of a Recorded Announcements Screen (R5si)

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change announcements**
  - a. On a vacant line (1 to 64), set `Ext .` to the extension number. The number must agree with the dial plan.
  - b. Set `Type`:
    - If a TN750 is used, type **integrated**  
If you enter `integrated`, you must complete the `Pro` (protect) and `Rate` fields.
    - If customer-provided external equipment is used, type **analog**  
If you enter `analog`, you must complete the `Queue Length` and `Port` fields. The `Queue Length` field applies only if **y** is entered in the `Queue` field.
  - c. Set `COR` to the desired class of restriction.
  - d. Set `TN` to the Tenant Partition Number.
  - e. Set `Name`. (You can use up to 15 characters to describe the announcement message.)
  - f. Set `Q` (queue) to **y**
  - g. Set `Pro` (protect) or `QLen` (queue length):
    - If a TN750 Announcement circuit pack is used, set `Protect` (integrated) to **n**
    - If customer-provided external equipment is used, set `Queue Length` (analog) to a number from **1** to **150**.
  - h. If you entered `integrated`, set `Rate` to specify the recording speed when recording announcements on the TN750B Announcement circuit pack. Valid entries are **16**, **32**, or **64**.
  - i. Set `Port` to the equipment location.
  - j. Press `ENTER`.
2. Enter **change hunt-group XX** where **XX** equals the DEFINITY AUDIX system hunt group number.
  - a. Set `First Ann. Extension` to the extension of the announcement system.
  - b. Set `First Announcement Delay (sec)` to **5**
  - c. Press `ENTER`.
3. Record the announcement.
  - For a TN750 Announcement circuit pack, dial the announcement's extension number from the console or from a voice terminal with a console class of service (COS).

- For a customer-provided external announcement system, make the recording using the instructions provided with the system.

## **Switch Multiple Coverage Paths**

---

Multiple coverage paths provide greater flexibility for call-answer treatment. System 75, Generic 1, Generic 3i, Generic 3i-Global, Generic 3s, Generic 3vs, Generic 3r, Release 5si, Release 5vs, or Release 5r can have up to four paths linked together.

On the Coverage Path screen, specify a second path in the `Next Path Number` field. You can link the second path to other paths. These are displayed in the `Linkage` field. For more details, see the appropriate switch documentation.

## **Listed Directory Number (LDN) Night Destination**

---

Direct Inward Dialing (DID) numbers can be treated as public Listed Directory Numbers (LDNs). The DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group extension may be entered as a night service destination to receive calls to these listed numbers when the switch is in the night service mode. You may want an automated attendant to handle such calls.

To use the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group as a night service destination, enter the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group extension in the `Night Destination` field on the switch Listed Directory Numbers screen.

## **Continue with the Installation**

---

After you have administered the relevant switch features for DEFINITY AUDIX, continue with [Chapter 7, "Joint Acceptance Testing"](#), before administering the subscribers on the switch.

# Joint Acceptance Testing



---

Joint acceptance testing is the process of performing a series of post-installation tests to demonstrate to the customer that the DEFINITY AUDIX System is functioning properly and that IMAPI is operational. These tests must be executed jointly by the customer's LAN system administrator and an experienced Lucent technician when the installed system integrates with customer-provided equipment. The customer and Lucent representatives must run these tests and resolve issues before the service order is completed.

## Acceptance Check Tasks

---

The acceptance check tasks include:

[Task 7-1 - "Add Two Test Subscribers"](#)

[Task 7-2 - "Test the Call Answer and Voice Mail Features"](#)

[Task 7-3 - "Run Test MO-Disk"](#)

[Task 7-4 - "Test The Local Area Network"](#)

[Task 7-5 - "Clear Administration, Error, and Alarm Logs"](#)

## Worksheets Needed

---

Before beginning these tasks, make sure you have the following worksheets:

- [Worksheet B-1: Administer the Voice Ports as Stations \(Digital Port Emulation\)](#).
- [Worksheet C-9: Set Up Alarm Origination](#)

The project manager should have provided you with these worksheets.

## Task 7-1: Add Two Test Subscribers

1. If you have not already done so, log into the DEFINITY AUDIX local terminal as **craft**. See [Task 5-1A](#) for the login procedure.
2. Type **add subscriber** and press **[RETURN]**.

The system displays the Subscriber screen.

```

drmf15   Active   Alarms: m A Thresholds: none           Logins: 2
add subscriber                                     Page 1 of 2
                                     SUBSCRIBER

      Name:                                     Locked? n
      Extension:                               Password:
      COS: class00                             Miscellaneous:
Switch Number:                               Covering Extension:
Community ID:                                Broadcast Mailbox?

Press [ENTER] to execute or press [CANCEL] to abort
enter command: add subscriber
    
```

Figure 7-1. Subscriber Screen



**NOTE:**

The two test subscriber extensions used in this task must be administered on the switch. See [Task 9-1](#) in [Chapter 9](#) for details on adding subscribers to the switch. (You can add subscribers on the switch using the Add Station screen.) The second test extension must have the coverage path for the AUDIX set.

3. With the cursor in the Name field, type the name of the first test subscriber, for example, test-1 or subscriber-1.
4. Move the cursor to the Extension field and type the extension of the first test subscriber that you are using for the test.



**NOTE:**

These are the only fields that you need to fill in. The system will use defaults for the remaining fields.

5. Press **[E3]** (Enter) to add the test subscriber.
6. Repeat Steps 2 through 5 for the second test subscriber.
7. If the system is running in a DCS environment, repeat Steps 2 through 5 for one remote test subscriber on each switch in the DCS network.



**NOTE:**

Make sure that each DCS remote subscriber is assigned the correct switch number. The switch number for DCS remote subscribers is *not* the same as the host switch number. The Switch Number field on the Subscriber screen must match the switch number for the subscriber's switch on the Switch Link DCIU-SCI screen.

8. Continue with [Task 7-2](#).

## **Task 7-2: Test the Call Answer and Voice Mail Features**

---

1. Create a test Call Answer message.
  - a. From one of the test telephones, call the extension of the second test telephone.
  - b. Let the telephone ring until the DEFINITY AUDIX system answers.
  - c. After the system greeting and the tone, leave a test message, for example, "This is a test Call Answer message."
  - d. Hang up.
2. Retrieve the Call Answer message.
  - a. Go to the telephone you just called, and check the message waiting indicator. This is either a lamp on the telephone or a stutter dial tone. (The MWI signal may take up to 1 minute to appear.) If the MWI is on, Continue with [Step b](#). If the MWI does not activate, refer to the troubleshooting procedures in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121, to activate the MWI.
  - b. From telephone with the MWI on, call the DEFINITY AUDIX extension.
  - c. After the DEFINITY AUDIX system answers and prompts you for your extension, press **[#]**.
  - d. When the DEFINITY AUDIX system prompts you for your password, press **[#]**. There is no password assigned to this extension.

- e. If the Name Record by Subscriber feature is on, the DEFINITY AUDIX system prompts you to record a name. Record a test name, for example, "test name."
    - f. Press **[2]** and then press **[0]** to listen to the message you recorded from the first test extension.
    - g. After listening to the message, press **[\*] [D]** to delete the message.
  3. Create a test Voice Mail message.
    - a. From the DEFINITY AUDIX session you are currently in, press **[1]**.
    - b. After the tone, speak a test message (for example "This is a test Voice Mail message.")
    - c. When you have finished speaking the message, press **[#]** to approve the message.
    - d. When prompted for a destination extension, enter the extension of the first test telephone and press **[#]** to end the addressing.
    - e. Press **[#]** again to deliver the test message.
    - f. Hang up.
  4. Retrieve the test Voice Mail message.
    - a. Walk back over to the first test telephone and check the MWI. It may take a minute or two for the MWI to turn on. When it is on, Continue with the next step. If the MWI does not activate, refer to the troubleshooting procedures in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121 to activate the MWI.
    - b. Call the DEFINITY AUDIX extension to retrieve the message.
    - c. After the DEFINITY AUDIX system answers and prompts you for your extension, press **[#]**.
    - d. When the DEFINITY AUDIX system prompts you for your password, press **[#]**. There is no password assigned to this extension.
    - e. Press **[2]** and then press **[0]** to listen to the message you recorded from the second test extension.
    - f. After listening to the message, press **[\*] [D]** to delete the message.
    - g. Hang up.
  5. Continue with [Task 7-3](#).

## **Task 7-3: Run Test MO-Disk**

---

At this point, the backup MO disk added in [Task 5-3](#) should still be in the magneto-optical disk drive.

1. Check the status of the MO disk drive.

- a. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **status mo-disk** and press **RETURN**.  
 The system displays the Status mo-disk screen. The Status field should display *In service, idle*.
- b. If the Status field displays any other value, see the Status MO-Disk screen description in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — R4.0 Screens Reference*, 585-300-213 for an explanation of the values of the Status field or see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121, for information on magneto-optical disk problems.

2. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **test mo-disk** and press **RETURN**.

The system displays the MODisk Test Results screen

```

drmf15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
test mo-disk Page 1 of 1
MODISK TEST RESULTS Date: 12/30/98 09:27

Resource Loc. Test Name Most Recent Test Result Test Counters:
Pass Fail Abort
MO_DISK 01C0602 Check MO Filesystem 0 0 0
MO_DISK 01C0602 Read/Write MO 0 0 0

Press [Enter] to execute
enter command: test mo-disk
    
```

Figure 7-2. MODISK Test Results

3. Press **F3** (Enter) to begin the test. The test takes from 1 to 10 minutes to complete.
4. If the test does not complete successfully, refer to *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121, for information on magneto-optical disk problems.

5. When the test completes successfully, determine the next step:
  - If the following conditions are met, continue with [Task 7-4](#).
    - AUDIX server hardware options have been purchased.
    - IMAPI system parameters have been activated.
  - If Audix server options or IMAPI system parameters have not been activated, go to [Task 7-5](#).

## Task 7-4: Test The Local Area Network

If possible, this task should be performed jointly with the customer's LAN system administrator.

Acceptance tests for the AUDIX server are limited to performing internal diagnostics of the server to the Lucent provided demarcation point. If a customer representative is available, joint acceptance testing will include a test of the customer's server, another AUDIX server, or a PC with or without INTUITY Message Manager.

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **test lan** and press **RETURN**.

The system displays the Test LAN Results screen.

```

drnfb15   Active   Alarms: n A Thresholds: none                               Logins: 2
test lan                                     Page 1 of 1
TEST LAN RESULTS                                     Date: 12/30/98 09:34

Resource  Loc.    Test Name                Most Recent      Test Counters:
          Test Result
LANINTF   01C06  Get hardware ID         0                0  0  0
LANINTF   01C06  External loop around    0                0  0  0
AIS       01C06  Test Process            0                0  0  0

Press [Enter] to execute
enter command: test lan
    
```

Figure 7-3. Test LAN Results Screen

2. Press **[F3]** (Enter) to begin the tests. These tests takes up to 2½ minutes to run.
3. If any of the individual tests fail, refer to *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121 for information on troubleshooting the LAN connection. If there are problems with the network itself, the LAN system administrator must resolve these problems before proceeding with this test.
4. To test if a connection can be made to an INTUITY Message Manager user or other LAN node, at the DEFINITY AUDIX administration command line type **test lan dest** followed by the IP numerical address (in the form *nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn*) on the screen then press **[RETURN]**.
5. Press **[F3]** (Enter).  
 If the connection is made, a UNIX ping is returned. The test takes approximately 15 seconds. If the test fails, refer to *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121 for information on troubleshooting the LAN connection.
6. After the tests pass, continue with [Task 7-5](#).

## **Task 7-5: Clear Administration, Error, and Alarm Logs**

---

This task must be completed from the technical support center.

1. Call the RMC and let them know you have completed the installation and acceptance tests for this DEFINITY AUDIX system. Ask them to clear the administration, error, and alarm logs.
2. Continue with [Chapter 8](#).

# Initial Subscriber Administration

# 8

---

This chapter describes the tasks required to administer the initial subscribers.

## Initial Subscriber Administration Tasks

---

This chapter contains the following tasks:

[Task 8-1 - "Optimize the Class of Service \(COS\) Values"](#)

[Task 8-2 - "Add the Initial Subscribers"](#)

[Task 8-3 - "Complete Initial Administration"](#)

[Task 8-1](#) and [Task 8-2](#) are completed by either the DEFINITY AUDIX system administrator or by the Lucent Software Specialist (SS), depending on the terms of the customer contract.

[Task 8-3](#) is completed by either the DEFINITY AUDIX system administrator or SS and the Remote Support Center.

[Task 8-3](#) is completed by either the system administrator or the SS administering the initial subscribers. This task reminds the administrator to perform the initial administration tasks described in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration*, 585-300-507.

## Worksheets Needed

---

Before beginning these tasks, make sure you have [Worksheet C-8: Add Subscribers](#). The worksheet is included as an appendix in this document.

## Task 8-1: Optimize the Class of Service (COS) Values

Before you administer the subscribers, you must first ensure that the COS values you assign to subscribers are optimized for your system. For instance, if you are assigning Intuity Message Manager to a set of subscribers, you should first activate IMAPI on the appropriate COS. You can also change other COS settings to activate desired features.

Use the following procedure to activate Intuity Message Manager on a COS. You can also modify this procedure to activate other features for any Class of Service you choose.

1. Decide which class of service is appropriate for inclusion of INTUITY Message Manager.
2. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **change cos x** where x is the COS number you just chose.

The system displays the Class of Service screen.

```

drnfb15 Active Alarms: n A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
change cos 1 CLASS OF SERVICE Page 1 of 2

Name: Class01 COS Number: 1 Modified? y
Addressing Format: extension

Login Announcement Set: System
System Multilingual is OFF Call Answer Primary Annc. Set: System
Call Answer Language Choice? n Call Answer Secondary Annc. Set: System

PERMISSIONS Type: call-answer Announcement Control? n
Outcalling? n Priority Messages? y Broadcast: none
IMAPI Access? y IMAPI Voice File Transfer? y

enter command: change cos 1
    
```

Figure 8-1. Class of Service Screen

3. To activate INTUITY Message Manager, type **y** in the following fields:
  - IMAPI access?
  - IMAPI Voice File Transfer?
4. To activate Outcalling, type **y** in the Outcalling field. (See [Worksheet D-4](#) for other details about Outcalling.)

5. Change other settings as needed.
6. Press **F3** (Enter) to save the changes.
7. Repeat this procedure as needed to modify other classes of service.
8. Continue with [Task 8-2](#).

## **Task 8-2: Add the Initial Subscribers**

This task describes the basic procedure for adding subscribers via the Subscriber screen. The basic procedure requires entering only subscriber names and extensions. If you are activating Intuity Message Manager, Use default values for all other parameters. Check [Worksheet C-8](#) to see if any subscribers require administration other than their names and extensions. If so, refer to Chapter 3, *Ongoing Administration*, in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration*, 585-300-507, for the procedures to add and administer the subscribers. If subscribers do not require extra administration, continue with the following procedure.

### NOTE:

You can also add subscribers via the AUDIX Administration and Data Acquisition Package (ADAP) **addsub** command. This procedure is described in *AUDIX Administration and Data Acquisition Package*, 585-302-502. However, before adding subscribers via ADAP, make sure the DEFINITY AUDIX system administrator has installed and administered the ADAP system.

The procedure for adding subscribers via the DEFINITY AUDIX Subscriber screen is as follows.

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **add subscriber**

The system displays the Subscriber screen

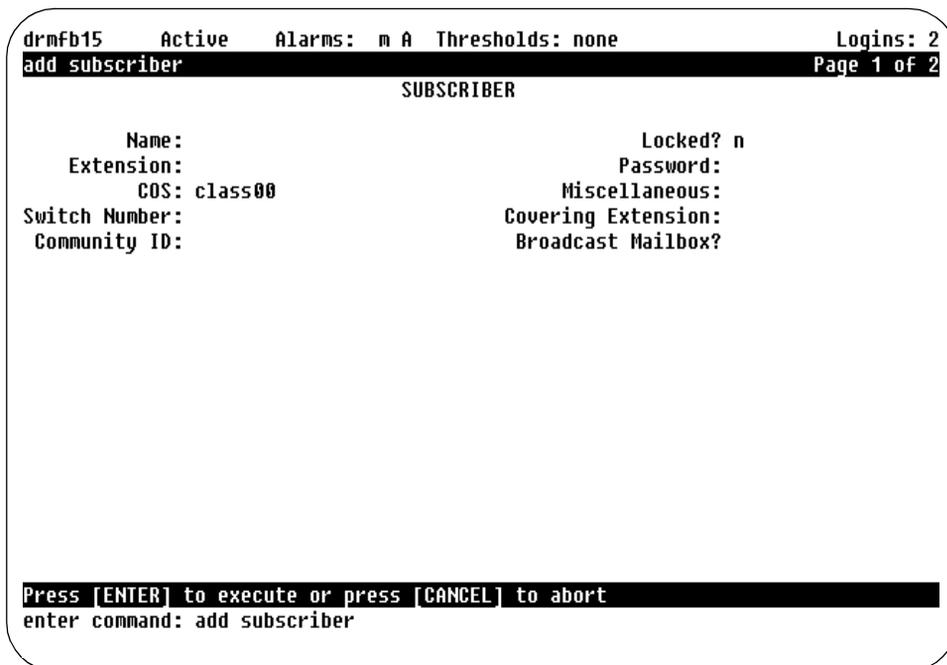


Figure 8-2. Add Subscriber Screen

2. Type the name of the first subscriber listed on [Worksheet C-8](#) in the Name field.
3. Type the extension of the first subscriber in the Extension field.
4. Type in the correct Class of Service for the subscriber in the COS field.

**⇒ NOTE:**

You can use the default value, or you can type any COS that is administered on DEFINITY AUDIX. Select a COS that has the appropriate settings for Intuity Message Manager, Outcalling, and any other optional features you administered in [Task 8-1](#).

5. Press **[F3]** (Enter) to add the subscriber.
6. Repeat Steps [1](#) through [5](#) for each subscriber listed on [Worksheet C-8](#).
7. Continue with [Task 8-3](#).

## Task 8-3: Complete Initial Administration

---

The DEFINITY AUDIX system administrator or SS should complete the following steps.

1. Read Chapter 2 and Chapter 3 of *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration*, for an overview of the administration process.
2. Complete the initial administration tasks given in that book that apply to the system being installed, for example:
  - Recording automated attendant menus
  - Recording customized announcements
  - Changing system passwords
  - Installing and administering the AUDIX Administration and Data Acquisition Package (ADAP)
3. Tell your subscribers the features of their DEFINITY AUDIX system.
4. Copy and distribute any letters and user documents that your subscribers need.
5. Continue with [Chapter 9](#).

## Final Switch Administration: G3r/R5r

# 9

---

This chapter includes the final tasks required to administer DEFINITY AUDIX in the host switch.

### Task 9-1: Modifying the Station Screen for Each Subscriber

---

Modify the station screen for each subscriber to complete the subscriber administration.

At the switch administration terminal, modify the station screen for each DEFINITY AUDIX subscriber as follows:

1. At the command prompt, enter **change station extension**  
where *extension* is the extension of the voice port you want to modify.
2. Set `Coverage Path` to the subscriber coverage path defined in [Task 4-5](#) in [Chapter 4](#).  
Set `LWC Reception` to **spe**.
3. Set `LWC Activation?` to **n**

#### NOTE:

We recommend that the switch Leave Word Calling (LWC) feature not be activated for any voice terminals other than the DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports since this will cause a problem when clearing message waiting indicator lamps (MWIs). We recommend you do not assign a LWC button to any subscriber. Thus, avoid using the code **lwc-store** for any button.

4. Set `Coverage Msg Retrieval?` to **y**
5. Set `Message Waiting Indicator?` to **led** or **neon** if the voice terminal has an MWI lamp. This applies to 500, 2500, and 7104A voice terminals only.
6. Press **ENTER** to save the changes.

## Restrictions On Switch Translations

The switch names database places several restrictions on DEFINITY AUDIX subscriber names.

- Names in the switch names database must be unique when compared to other names, trunk names, hunt group names, etc.
- Names in the switch names database must be 15 characters or less.
- Names in the switch names database or trunk names must not contain the character string <space> to <space>.
- Names in the switch names database or trunk names must not contain the word *AUDIX* (uppercase) except in voice port names related to the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
- The DEFINITY AUDIX system recognizes names in the switch names database that meet the rules required by the switch directory. The switch does not include names in the directory that contain punctuation marks except for the following punctuation marks:

- Comma ( , )

Multiple commas in a name, a comma as the first character of a name, and a comma as the last character of a name are not allowed.

- Period ( . )

- Ampersand ( & )

- Dash ( — )

- Apostrophe ( ' )

If a name includes other punctuation marks, the DEFINITY AUDIX system treats calls from that station as outside calls. If the principle is a DEFINITY AUDIX subscriber, the DEFINITY AUDIX system answers coverage calls in stand-alone mode.

- Stations with no names administered will be handled correctly by the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

If a name is not found in the switch directory, the DEFINITY AUDIX system treats the first set of contiguous digits surrounded by non-digits as the extension of the calling/called party. The length of this set of numbers must be the same as the length specified in the dial plan. Names that are not in the switch directory must not contain dial plan digits unless the digits represent the extension of the telephone user.

7. Continue with [Chapter 10](#).

## Customer Acceptance

# 10

---

With the exception of [Task 10-1](#), this chapter lists the tasks that the Project Manager must complete with the customer to hand the DEFINITY AUDIX system over to the customer. Most of these tasks are part of the Streamlined Implementation process. Therefore, they are not described fully in this document, but are listed here as a final check to make sure they are completed.

### Task 10-1: Alarm Origination Administration Test and Status MO Disk

---

[Worksheet C-9](#) indicates whether alarm origination is to be activated through *AUDIX only*, through *switch only*, or through *audix & switch*. If alarm origination is to be set up through the switch only, skip to Step 9 of this task.

You will perform this task jointly with personnel at the INADS center, which is part of the Technical Services Organization (TSO) at Lucent.

The steps listed below present a typical execution of this task. The steps for this site may vary, depending on the approach you agree upon with the INADS personnel.

1. Call the INADS center and request administration and test of alarm origination for this DEFINITY AUDIX system.
2. If you have not already done so, log in to the DEFINITY AUDIX system terminal as **craft**. Refer to [Task 5-1A](#) for the login procedure.
3. Type **change system-parameters maintenance** and press **(RETURN)**.

The system displays the System-Parameters Maintenance screen

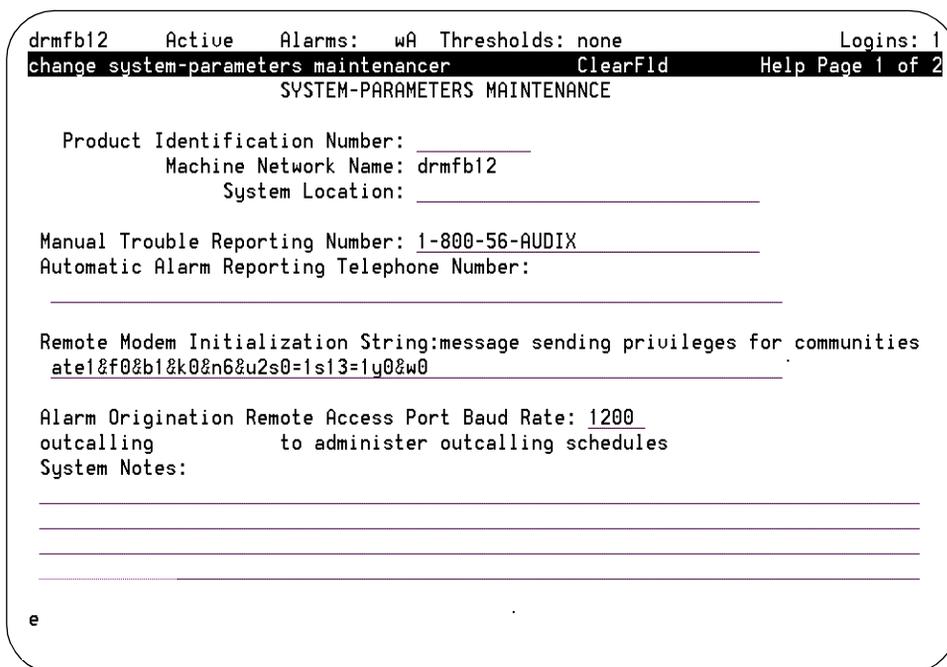


Figure 10-1. System-Parameters Maintenance Screen - Page 1

With information given to you by the Project Manager and with the help of the INADS personnel, fill in all fields on the screen.

4. Verify that the following fields are filled in:
  - Product Identification Number
  - Machine Network Name
  - System Location
  - Automatic Alarm Reporting Telephone Number
  - Remote Modem Initialization String

The default initialization string listed below is configured for US Robotics 28.8 and 33.6 modems:

**AT&F0E1X4&A3&B1&K0&N6&U2S0=1S13=1Y0&W0**

The DEFINITY AUDIX system will input this string into the non-volatile memory whenever you reboot the system.



**CAUTION:**

Do not modify the initialization string unless the remote service center tells you to do so.

If you have a different modem, see [“Modem Option Settings \(for Port C Modems\)”](#) in [Appendix H](#) to optimize this initialization string.

- Alarm Origination Remote Access Port Baud Rate
5. Press **NEXTPAGE** (F7) to display the second page of System-Parameters Maintenance screen

```
change system-parameters maintenance Page 2 of 2
SYSTEM-PARAMETERS MAINTENANCE

Alarm Origination Active? n
All Alarms Resolved Notification? n

ALARM ACTION:

                Major Minor
      System:  call  call
SCSI Devices:  call  call
Filesystems:  call  call
Switch Link:  call  call
Voice Ports:  call  call
Networking:   call  call
Maintenance:  call  call

Close Contacts on Alarm Origination Failure? y

Maximum Number of Event Log Entries: 10000

enter command: change system-parameters maintenance
```

**Figure 10-2. System-Parameters Maintenance Screen - Page 2**

If [Worksheet C-9](#) indicates that alarm origination is to be activated through the *switch only*, enter **n** in the Alarm Origination Active? field. If either *audix only*, or *audix & switch*, is indicated on the worksheet, enter **y** in the Alarm Origination Active? field.

6. Ask the INADS personnel to log in and display the System-Parameters Maintenance screen. The following steps should then be completed by INADS personnel:
  - a. Check that the login is successful.

10 Customer Acceptance

Alarm Origination Administration Test and Status MO Disk

10-4

- b. Check that the Product Identification Number on the System-Parameters Maintenance screen is correct.
  - c. Enter the **test alarm-origination** command, terminate the session, and hang up.
  - d. Check the appropriate trouble ticket. The trouble ticket should show **INADS, n, MINOR** in the description field to indicate that a minor off-board alarm was reported to INADS. There may be additional text in the description field if other resolved alarms were reported.
  - e. Make a second call, log in to the DEFINITY AUDIX system, and check the error log to verify that there are no problems.
  - f. Terminate the session and hang up.
7. If all the fields are properly filled in, press (F1) (Cancel) to exit the screen.  
 This completes the alarm origination test.
8. Verify the status of the add mo-disk function performed in [Task 5-3](#), by typing **status mo-disk** followed by (RETURN).  
 The system displays the Status MO-Disk screen.

```

drnfb15    Active    Alarms: m A  Thresholds: none                Logins: 2
Status mo-disk                                     Page 1 of 1
                STATUS MO-DISK

MO Drive Location: 01C0602
                Status: In service, idle

DRIVE:
    Equipped? y
    Vendor: OLYMPUS
    Model: MOS350
    Revision: T102

CARTRIDGE:
    Equipped? y                Self-Diagnostics: pass
    Administered? y           Write Test: pass
    Write Enabled? y          Read Test: pass
    Capacity(Mbytes): 640MB    Verify Test: pass

Status Command Complete
enter command:
    
```

Figure 10-3. Status MO-Disk Screen

**10** Customer Acceptance  
Perform a Walk Through

10-5

9. The Status field should display *In service, idle*. If it does not, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, for information to correct the problem.
10. Continue with [Task 10-2](#).

## **Task 10-2: Perform a Walk Through**

---

Perform a walk-through with the customer in which you do the following:

- Show the customer the System-Parameters Customer-Options screen to verify that the purchased ports and features are activated



**NOTE:**

Log in to the administration terminal as **cust** to display this screen.

- Verify that the second blank magneto-optical disk is present



**NOTE:**

The first is installed in the magneto-optical disk drive for system backups.

- Verify that all DEFINITY AUDIX system documentation is present, and then tell the customer how to use the documentation.
- Provide the customer with a list of telephone numbers for technical support.

## **Task 10-3: Demonstrate Updated Customer Database**

---

Show the customer the Test Alarm-Origination Short screen to verify that the customer database is updated.

## **Task 10-4: Project Review**

---

Conduct a project review according to current procedures.

# Switch Carrier Configuration Worksheets



---

To install a DEFINITY AUDIX system in a System 75, DEFINITY, or ProLogix at a customer site, the switch must have two<sup>1</sup> contiguous port slots available in a carrier. If the switch does not have two contiguous port slots available, the system will have to be rearranged or a new carrier purchased.

**⇒ NOTE:**

Verify that the switch and switch software load can accommodate the DEFINITY AUDIX system. See *System Description* (585-300-214) for the load requirements of the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

Whoever is assigned the task of reconfiguring the circuit packs should complete the following steps:

1. Complete [Worksheet A-1](#). In the first row, indicate the type of carrier, such as port carrier or control carrier. In the remaining rows, write the circuit pack currently occupying the indicated port slot. The total number of port slots depends on the type of switch and function of the carrier.
2. Using the carrier configuration rules in the correct document for the customer's switch, determine how two<sup>1</sup> contiguous port slots can be obtained for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
  - For G3V2 or higher, use *DEFINITY Communications System Generic 3 System Description and Specifications*, 555-230-201, Issue 2 or higher.

In reconfiguring the circuit packs use the following guidelines:

- Move as few packs as possible; look for a carrier that has one or two contiguous port slots already available.
- Consider the costs of testing once the carrier has been rearranged (for example, tie trunks and DS1 packs are more expensive to test than some other types of circuit packs).
- Keep in mind the ease with which circuit packs can be moved. Circuit packs are listed below in order of easiest to most difficult to move:

---

1. For the ProLogix, the DEFINITY AUDIX system only needs one slot if it is installed in slot 6.

- Analog line packs: stations, CO, WATS, DID, and AUX
- Hybrid line packs
- Digital line packs



**NOTE:**

(Try to avoid packs associated with any of the following: data sets with many feature buttons, console, data lines, CEO's line, speech synthesizers, announcements.)

- BRI line packs
- Tone detector packs
- Tie Trunk packs
- ISDN packs/DS1 packs
- Pooled modem packs
- Tone Clock Board (not movable)
- ASAI-related packs: BRI/LAN Gateway

The above list is not complete. The switch may include other packs that are difficult to move.

3. Complete [Worksheet A-2](#) to show which two<sup>2</sup> contiguous slots the DEFINITY AUDIX system will use and where the other circuit packs should be placed. Give the completed [Worksheet A-2](#) to the technician who will rearrange the carrier circuit packs.

## **Worksheet A-1: Port Slot Assignments (Before Carrier Rearrangement)**

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared by \_\_\_\_\_

Contact telephone number \_\_\_\_\_

Complete the following worksheet to indicate how circuit packs are currently arranged in the switch carrier.

**A** Switch Carrier Configuration Worksheets  
 Port Slot Assignments (Before Carrier Rearrangement)

On the worksheet, the slots are numbered as seen from the front of the carrier, with slot 1 on the far left and slot 20 on the far right<sup>3</sup>. It is not necessary to fill in the worksheet for all existing circuit packs. Specify only those circuit packs that must be moved (if any) in the carrier reconfiguration process.

	Carrier A	Carrier B	Carrier C	Carrier D	Carrier E
Carrier Function					
Port slot 1					
Port slot 2					
Port slot 3					
Port slot 4					
Port slot 5					
Port slot 6					
Port slot 7					
Port slot 8					
Port slot 9					
Port slot 10					
Port slot 11					
Port slot 12					
Port slot 13					
Port slot 14					
Port slot 15					
Port slot 16					
Port slot 17					
Port slot 18					
Port slot 19					
Port slot 20					

3. The slot order is different for a ProLogix. The Prologix is a stacked cabinet with slot 1 - 5 on the bottom, and slots 6 - 10 on top.

# Worksheet A-2: Port Slot Assignments (For Carrier Rearrangement)

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared by \_\_\_\_\_

Contact telephone number \_\_\_\_\_

Complete the following worksheet to indicate how circuit packs should be arranged in the switch carrier before the DEFINITY AUDIX system is installed. On the worksheet, the slots are numbered as seen from the front of the carrier, with slot 1 on the far left and slot 20 on the far right.<sup>4</sup> It is not necessary to fill in the worksheet for all existing circuit packs. Specify only the new positions of circuit packs that must be moved (if any) and then indicate the two slots the DEFINITY AUDIX system is to occupy.

Use the information in this appendix to determine the carrier into which the DEFINITY AUDIX system should be installed.

	Carrier A	Carrier B	Carrier C	Carrier D	Carrier E
Carrier Function					
Slot 1					
Slot 2					
Slot 3					
Slot 4					
Slot 5					
Slot 6					
Slot 7					
Slot 8					
Slot 9					
Slot 10					
Slot 11					
Slot 12					
Slot 13					
Slot 14					
Slot 15					
Slot 16					
Slot 17					

4. The slot order is different for a ProLogix. The Prologix is a stacked cabinet with slot 1 - 5 on the bottom, and slots 6 - 10 on top.

	Carrier A	Carrier B	Carrier C	Carrier D	Carrier E
Carrier Function					
Slot 18					
Slot 19					
Slot 20					

## Worksheet A-3: Slot Locations for the DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared by \_\_\_\_\_

Contact telephone number \_\_\_\_\_

In the worksheet below, specify the locations of the two<sup>5</sup> contiguous slots into which the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly is to be installed.

Slot occupied by DEFINITY AUDIX System	Digital Port Equipment Location <sup>1</sup>
first	
second	

- 
- For System 75, the equipment location is a 5-character identifier; the first character identifies the carrier, the second and third characters identify the slot number, and the fourth and fifth characters identify the port number. As an example, a valid location for System 75 is **B0701**: carrier B, slot 07, and port 01. For all other switches, an additional 1 or 2 digits is prepended to the carrier, slot, and port location to identify the cabinet. For example, the location **02B0701** specifies cabinet 02, carrier B, slot 07, port 01.

---

5. The DEFINITY AUDIX system only needs one port slot in a ProLogix if it is installed in slot 6.

The two contiguous slots are administered with codes or left blank as listed in the following table. The assignments are dependent on the switch type and whether the switch link is administered as a Digital Port (DP) or Analog Port (AP).

Switch	DS or CL	Left-hand slot	Right-hand slot
All switch releases lower than 7	DP		TN754 TN2181
	AP		TN746
All switch releases 7.1 or greater	DP	<b>ADX12D</b> <b>ADX8D</b>	<b>TN568</b>
	AP	ADX12A	TN568

## Switch Administration Worksheets

# B

---

Before a software associate or software specialist can perform initial switch administration for the DEFINITY AUDIX system, he or she must obtain certain information from the customer. This appendix has worksheets that a software associate or software specialist and the customer should complete before installation. The worksheets include information necessary for required switch administration and any optional switch features the customer wants to use.

These tasks are described in detail in [Chapter 4](#).

Worksheets are included for the following list of tasks. After the name of the task in the list, *digital port emulation* means the task may apply to DEFINITY AUDIX systems emulating digital ports in display set or control link integration mode. *Analog port emulation* means the task applies only to DEFINITY AUDIX systems emulating an analog port board. *Control link integration* means the task applies to systems operating in control link integration, regardless of its emulation type. *DCS environment* means the task applies to only those DEFINITY AUDIX systems being installed in a switch that operates in a DCS network. *Digital Networking* means the task applies to DEFINITY AUDIX systems that are digitally networked with other AUDIX systems. *All* means the task may apply to any DEFINITY AUDIX system, regardless of its mode of operation.

- Administer the voice ports as stations — Digital port emulation
- Assign the hunt group — Digital port emulation
- Assign the call coverage group for voice ports — Digital port emulation
- Assign the call coverage path for subscribers — Digital port emulation
- Administer the digital networking port — Digital port emulation, Digital Networking
- Administer the 7400A data module or ADU — Digital port emulation, Digital Networking
- Administer a modem — Digital port emulation, Digital Networking

Because some of the information needed for these tasks depends on whether the DEFINITY AUDIX system is using digital port emulation or analog port emulation, a separate set of worksheets is included for each. If the DEFINITY AUDIX system is running in control link (CL) integration in a DCS environment, additional copies of the relevant worksheets are needed for each remote switch in the DCS network.

In this appendix, the following conventions apply for values listed in the right-hand column of the worksheets:

- [values in plain type and brackets] are the defaults
- **[values in bold type with brackets]** are recommended
- **values in bold type with no brackets** are required

## Worksheet B-1: Administer the Voice Ports as Stations (Digital Port Emulation)

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared by \_\_\_\_\_

Contact telephone number \_\_\_\_\_

The information in the following tables is required for administering the DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports on the switch. For more information on these fields, see [Chapter 4](#).

For digital port emulation, DEFINITY AUDIX can emulate either the TN754 circuit pack (8 port board) or the TN2181 circuit pack (12 port board). In either case, all digital ports must be administered on the switch (either 8 or 12) and on the DEFINITY AUDIX system regardless of how many ports the customer purchased. However, only the number of ports actually purchased are administered in the hunt group.

Extension Complete next table.	See next table
Set type options (TN754 and TN2181)	<b>7405D</b> (S75, G1, G3V1-V4, R5, R6, ProLogix R6)  <b>ADX16D</b> (G3R7 and higher; ProLogix R7 and greater) <sup>1</sup>
Port Complete next table.	See next table
Name Complete next table.	See next table
Lock Messages	<b>n</b>
Security Code	leave blank
Coverage Path Enter the number you want to use to identify the coverage path for voice ports. This coverage path should cover all calls to the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group.	

<p>COR</p> <p>To prevent toll fraud, Lucent Technologies recommends that you select a Class of Restriction (COR) for voice ports such that subscribers can only call other numbers with the <i>same</i> COR. If, after careful consideration, you find that subscribers do need to be able to call numbers with different CORs, add permissions for these (one at a time) as required. (The AMIS Analog Networking, Digital Networking, Message Delivery, and Outcalling features require that subscribers be able to access outside lines.) See <i>DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration</i>, 585-300-507 for more information on preventing toll fraud.</p>	
<p>COS</p> <p>Select a class of service (COS) for the voice ports that permits the Call Forwarding all Calls and the Data Privacy features to be activated. Lucent Technologies recommends that the COS permit <i>only</i> these features to be activated.</p>	
<p>LWC Reception</p>	<p>System 75, G1, G3V1 with 8-port emulation</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ audix (G3r)</li> <li>■ ap-spe (System 75 R1V3)</li> <li>■ msa-spe (G1, G3iV1, G3vsV1)</li> </ul> <p>G3i/G3s/G3vs/R5vs/R5si</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ msa-spe</li> </ul> <p>G3r</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ audix</li> </ul>
<p>LWC Activation</p>	<p>y</p>
<p>SMDR (CDR) Privacy</p>	<p>[n]</p>
<p>Redirect Notification</p>	<p>[n]</p>
<p>Bridged Call Alerting</p>	<p>[n]</p>
<p>Coverage Message Retrieval</p>	<p>[y]</p>
<p>Auto Answer</p>	<p>[n]</p>
<p>Data Restriction</p>	<p>[n]</p>
<p>Idle Appearance Preference</p>	<p>[n]</p>
<p>Restrict Last Appearance</p> <p>Complete next table.</p>	<p>See next table</p>

**B** Switch Administration Worksheets

*Administer the Voice Ports as Stations (Digital Port Emulation)*

B-5

Coverage Module	<b>[n]</b>
Messaging Server Name (G3r only)	leave blank
AUDIX Name (G3r only) This name appears on the switch USER-DEFINED ADJUNCT NAMES screen.	
Display Language (G3i-Global only)	<b>English</b>
Feature Module (S75 and G1 only)	<b>[n]</b>
Headset (S75 only)	<b>[n]</b>
Client Room Redirection	<b>Y</b>

1. ADX16D is the recommended set type for digital port emulation in all DEFINTY and ProLogix switches R7 and above.

## Worksheet B-2: Assign the Hunt Group (Digital Port Emulation)

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The information in the following tables is required for assigning the hunt group. Use Table B-2 for G3V2 and higher and ProLogix.

Enter the location, name, and extension for each of the 12 voice ports in the worksheet below:

**Table B-1. G3V2 and Higher, ProLogix**

DEFINITY AUDIX Port	Digital Port Equipment Location	Name	Extension	Restrict Last Appearance
1		[AUDIX 1]		y
2		[AUDIX 2]		y
3		[AUDIX 3]		y
4		[AUDIX 4]		y
5		[AUDIX 5]		n
6		[AUDIX 6]		n
7		[AUDIX 7]		n
8		[AUDIX 8]		n
9		[AUDIX 9]		n
10		[AUDIX 10]		n
11		[AUDIX TRANSFER]		n
12		[AUDIX 12]		y

The following information is required to define a hunt group (containing the voice port members) for the DEFINITY AUDIX system voice ports. Only the number of ports actually purchased should be administered in the hunt group.

**B** Switch Administration Worksheets

Assign the Hunt Group (Digital Port Emulation)

B-7

<p>Group Number</p> <p>Enter the number you want to use to identify the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group. (This number, preceded by an <b>h</b>, is entered in the voice port COVERAGE PATH screen and in subscriber coverage paths.)</p>	
<p>Group Extension</p> <p>Enter the extension number you want subscribers to dial to retrieve their messages from the DEFINITY AUDIX system.</p>	
<p>Group Type</p>	<p>[ucd] (R5 or less)</p> <p>[ucd-mia] (R6 or greater)</p>
<p>Group Name</p> <p>Enter the name you want to appear on display sets when subscribers call the DEFINITY AUDIX system. ("AUDIX" must be included in the name for G3-MA to recognize this name as the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group.)</p>	
<p>Message Center</p>	<p>[none]</p> <p>[msa] ( if using vectors)</p>
<p>ACD</p>	<p>[n]</p>
<p>Queue (y/n)?</p>	<p>[y]</p>
<p>Vector (y/n)?</p> <p>The DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group may be vector-controlled if Call Vectoring is a feature on the switch.</p>	<p>[n]</p>
<p>COR</p> <p>Enter the class of restriction (COR) you want to assign to the extension that subscribers call to reach the DEFINITY AUDIX system. For security reasons, the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group should be assigned its own COR that is restricted from accessing all outgoing trunks or only those trunks needed for Outcalling or AMIS Analog and Digital Networking. <i>The default COR is not recommended.</i></p>	
<p>ISDN Call Disp</p> <p>If ISDN-PRI is enabled, enter <b>grp-name</b> or <b>mbr-name</b> to specify whether the hunt group name or number is sent to the originating subscriber.</p>	

---

Queue Length

A suggested length is the number of configured DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports.

If you want a switch recorded announcement, enter the extension number here.

Optional if the queue is y and must be blank if there is no first announcement.

## Worksheet B-3: Assign the Call Coverage Path for Voice Ports (Digital Port Emulation)

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The following information is required to define call coverage paths for the DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports.

Coverage Path Number	
Use the same coverage path number as Worksheet B-1.	
Coverage Criteria	
Station/Group Status Active? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[n/n]
Coverage Criteria	
Busy? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[n/n]
Coverage Criteria	
Don't Answer? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[n/n]
Coverage Criteria	
All? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[y/y]
SAC/Go to Cover? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[n/n]
Next Path Number	
If desired, enter the second path to which calls will be directed in case the current path fails.	
Number of Rings	use the default
Coverage Points	
Point1	
Enter <b>h</b> followed by the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group number from <a href="#">Worksheet B-2</a> .	

## Worksheet B-4: Assign the Call Coverage Path for Subscribers (Digital Port Emulation)

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The following information is required to define call coverage paths for subscribers. Complete a copy of this worksheet for each different coverage path.

Coverage Path Number	
Enter the number you want to identify the call coverage path for subscribers.	
Coverage Criteria	
Station/Group Status Active? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[n/n]
Coverage Criteria	
Busy? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[y/y]
Coverage Criteria	
Don't Answer? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[y/y]
Coverage Criteria	
All? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[n/n]
SAC/Go to Cover? (Inside Call/Outside Call)	[y/y]
Next Path Number	
If desired, enter the second path to which calls will be directed in case the current path fails.	
Number of rings	
Enter the number of rings (1-99) you want before a call goes to coverage. Three is recommended.	
Coverage Points	
For Point1, Point2, or Point3, enter h followed by the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group number.	

## Worksheet B-16: Administer Digital Networking Ports (Digital Port Emulation)

For a complete set of Digital Networking worksheets, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Digital Networking*, 585-300-534.

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The following information is required to administer the digital networking port on a Data Module screen on the switch

Assign a data extension (Enter the data extension on the data module screen for voice port one)	
Enter a name for the data extension	
Enter a name that identifies the networking port	
Enter a class of restriction (COR) Enter a class of service (COS) (Use a separate COS with data privacy and no restrictions.)	

## Worksheet B-19: Administer a Modem – Digital Networking

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

For each modem used in a DCP Mode 2 modem/data module arrangement, administer a STATION screen on the switch. Complete a worksheet for each modem.

Type	2500
Port	
Name Enter a name that identifies the modem (such as <b>dignet modem1</b> ).	
COS	
COR	
Tests	[y]
LWC Reception	[n]
LWC Activation	[n]
Coverage Msg Retrieval	[n]
CDR Privacy	[n]
Auto Answer	[none]
Redirect Notification	[n]
Data Restriction	[y]
Per Button Ring Control	[n]
Call Waiting Indication	[n]
Bridged Call Alerting	[n]
Att. Call Waiting Indication	[n]
Off Premises Station	[n]
Distinctive Audible Alert	[n]
Switchhook Flash	[n]
Message Waiting Indicator	leave blank
Adjunct Supervision	[n]

# DEFINITY AUDIX System Administration Worksheets



---

Before a software associate or software specialist can perform initial administration for the DEFINITY AUDIX system, he or she needs to obtain certain information from the customer. A software associate or software specialist should have the customer complete the worksheets on the following pages before installation. The worksheets include information necessary for initial DEFINITY AUDIX system administration.

You need information from the customer before you can complete the following DEFINITY AUDIX administration tasks:

- Activate customer options
- Activate DEFINITY AUDIX server hardware (LAN) options
- Assign the DEFINITY AUDIX machine ID
- Set system parameters limits
- Assign the time zone
- Activate parameters and basic features
- Add subscribers
- Set up Alarm Origination
- Network (completed forms should be provided with the spec.)

For a complete description of these tasks and the information required to complete them, see [Chapter 5](#).

## Worksheet C-1: Activate Customer Options

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The information you supply here will be input on the SYSTEM-PARAMETERS CUSTOMER-OPTIONS screen during installation.

Field	Default	Desired
Port Emulation Type	TN746 (CL only), TN754, or TN2181 <sup>1</sup>	TN2181
Maximum Number of Voice Ports	4	
AMIS Analog	n	
Digital Networking <sup>2</sup>	n	
Maximum number of digital networking ports	n	
Multilingual	n	
Maximum Number of IMAPI Sessions	0	
Hours of Voice Storage Purchased		

1. For switch releases G3V2 and higher or Prologix, TN2181 digital port board emulation is always preferable over TN754 emulation to accommodate system expansion.
2. For DCP Mode 2 Connections, traffic restrictions may apply.

## Worksheet C-2: Activate IMAPI for the AUDIX Server Hardware (LAN) Options

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The information you supply here will be input on the SYSTEM-PARAMETERS IMAPI-OPTIONS screen during installation only if the customer purchased INTUITY Message Manager.

Field	Default	Desired
Maximum Number of Enabled IMAPI Sessions	32	
Enable Check_new messages	n	<b>y</b>
Enable Deliver_ca_message	n	<b>n</b>
Enable Voice File Transfer	n	<b>y</b>
IMAPI Session Timeout	5	
IMAPI IP Address <sup>1</sup>		
IMAPI Subnet Mask <sup>1</sup>		
Default Gateway IP Address <sup>1</sup>		

---

1. This number is supplied by the LAN manager or administrator. The address appear in the form *nnn.nnn.nnn.nnn*, where each *nnn* can be a number between 0 and 255.

---

INTUITY Message Manager requires the following:

- A 10BaseT connection to the LAN
- Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP) between the DEFINITY AUDIX server and the end-users' PCs.
- A 486-33MHz PC with 10 MB of free hard disk storage. The tutorial requires an additional 10 MB of disk storage, if installed.
- IMM software, and the standard WIN socket open network programming interface.

— The PC requires the following operating system:

Release	Operating System
4.1	Windows 3.1 or later
4.3	Windows for Workgroups 3.11 or later
4.5	Windows 95 or Windows NT

Prior to activating and installing the LAN options that will allow IMM to work, the LAN administrator must add the AUDIX host name to the network domain name server. This will allow machine name addressing to the AUDIX system.

## Worksheet C-3: Assign the DEFINITY AUDIX Machine ID

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The information you supply here will be input on the MACHINE screen during cut-to-service administration.

Field	Default	Desired
Machine Name	local	
Machine Type	audix	<b>audix</b>
Location	local	<b>local</b>
Voiced Name	n	
Extension Length	4	
Voice ID	0	<b>0</b>
Default Community		
Messages without a community ID are assumed to have been sent from this community. See <i>DEFINITY AUDIX System — Feature Descriptions</i> , 585-300-206 for information on communities and the Sending Restrictions feature.		

Enter the address ranges for subscriber extensions for each machine in the table below. The prefix can be used to distinguish between machines that have overlapping extension ranges.

Machine	Prefix	Start Extension	End Extension
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			

## Worksheet C-5: Set System Parameters Limits

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The information you supply here will be input on the SYSTEM-PARAMETERS LIMITS screen during initial administration.

Limit	Default	Desired
Maximum Message Length (seconds)	1200	
Minimum Message Length (tenths of seconds)	10	
Total Messages in all Mailboxes The appropriate value depends on the disk size and the number of local subscribers. The recommended number is 10 times the number of subscribers.	50000	
Maximum Messages Awaiting Delivery The appropriate value depends on the disk size and the number of local subscribers. The recommended number is the number of subscribers.	5000	
Maximum Number of Local Subscribers <sup>1</sup>		

Limit	Default	Desired
The appropriate value depends on the disk size. See <i>DEFINITY AUDIX System — System Description</i> , 585-300-214 for more information.	1000	
Maximum Number of Administered Remote Subscribers	1000	
The appropriate value depends on the disk size. See <i>DEFINITY AUDIX System — System Description</i> , 585-300-214 for more information.		
Total List Entries		
This is the total entries allowed in all subscriber's lists.	50000	
Total Number of Lists per Subscriber	100	
Maximum Total Number of Recipients per List	250	
Maximum Administration Log Entries	1000	

1. The maximum number of local subscribers should be 2000 or less.

## Worksheet C-6: Assign the Time Zone

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The information you supply here will be input on the SWITCH TIME ZONE screen during initial administration.

In what time zone will your DEFINITY AUDIX system be installed (0-23)?	
Do you observe daylight savings time (y/n)?	

Valid United States time zones are as follows:

- Eastern — 5
- Central — 6
- Mountain — 7
- Pacific — 8
- Alaska — 9
- Hawaii — 10

## Worksheet C-7: Activate Parameters and Basic Features

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The information you supply here will be input on the SYSTEM-PARAMETERS FEATURES screen during cut-to-service administration.

Field	Default	Desired
<b>Log-in Parameters</b>		
Maximum Login Retries	3	<b>3</b>
Consecutive Invalid Attempts	18	
<b>System Guest Password</b>		
Minimum Password Length	0	
Lucent Technologies recommends changing this field to at least 5.		
<b>Password Aging Limits (days) Subscriber Mailboxes</b>		
Password expiration interval ( <b>0</b> for no password aging)	0	0-999
Minimum age before changes	0	0-99
Expiration warning ( <b>0</b> for no warning)	0	0-99
<b>Password Aging Limits (days) Administrator login</b>		
Password expiration interval ( <b>0</b> for no password aging)	0	
Minimum age before changes	0	
Expiration warning ( <b>0</b> for no warning)	0	
<b>Input Time Limits (seconds)</b>		
Normal	60	
Full Mailbox Timeout (seconds)	5	
Wait (*W)	180	
Between digits at auto-attendant or stand alone menu (3-12)	3	
<b>Disconnect Options</b>		
Quick Silence Disconnect?	n	
Silence Limit? (5-30 seconds)	30	

Field	Default	Desired
Tone Based Disconnect?	n	
<b>Miscellaneous Parameters</b>		
Broadcast Mailbox Extension	99999	
System Prime Time, Start	8:00	
System Prime Time, End	17:00	
Weekly Backup Enabled?	y	
Locals Only?	n	
Increment (l/s), Rewind?	s	
Increment (l/s), Advance?	s	
<b>Feature Activation</b>		
Traffic Collection	n	
Name Record by Subscriber?	y	
Multiple Personal Greetings?	y	
End of Message Warning?	y	
Warning Time (seconds)	15	
Priority on Call Answer?	n	
<b>Call Transfer Out of AUDIX</b>		
Transfer Type? (basic/enhanced <sup>1</sup> /none)	none	
Transfer Restriction (subscribers/digits)	subscribers	
Covering Extension	blank	
<b>Announcement Sets</b>		
System	standard	
Administrative	blank	

1. This feature is only available with control link integration.

**Rescheduling Increments For Unsuccessful Message Delivery<sup>1</sup>**

Increment	Days	Hours	Minutes
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			

Rescheduling Increments For Unsuccessful Message Delivery<sup>1</sup>

Increment	Days	Hours	Minutes
7			
8			
9			
10			

1. For information on default values, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System Release 4.0 — Screens Reference*, 585-300-211.

## Worksheet C-8: Add Subscribers

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The information you supply here will be input on the SUBSCRIBER and COS screens during cut-to-service administration. Complete the following information for each subscriber to be added to the DEFINITY AUDIX database during cut-to-service administration. The minimum information needed to add a subscriber to the DEFINITY AUDIX database is a name and an extension for the subscriber. The DEFINITY AUDIX system will supply defaults for all the remaining fields on the SUBSCRIBER screen.

You must administer the following information for each subscriber to be added to the DEFINITY AUDIX system database:

- Subscriber name
- Subscriber extension
- Initial password
- Class of Service (COS) — 12 classes of service can be defined for the DEFINITY AUDIX system; see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration*, 585-300-507 and *DEFINITY AUDIX System -- System Description*, 585-300-214 for more information on COS. Values for the default COS, found on the Change Subscriber screen (page 2) and the Change COS screen, appear on the next page.
- Miscellaneous
- Switch ID — The number identifying the switch on which the subscriber is administered. (The default value represents the local switch.) Enter  $\emptyset$  if there is no station on the switch. In this case, no lamp updates will be performed.

- Covering extension
- Community ID — The number identifying the community of subscribers to which this subscriber will belong; community ID can be used to administer, for example, message sending restrictions.
- Broadcast Mailbox

Options	Default Values for COS 0
Addressing Format	extension
System Multilingual is ON	
Login Announcement Set	(specific)
Call Answer Language Choice?	y
Call Answer Primary Annc. Set	(specific)
Call Answer Secondary Annc. Set	(specific)
<b>PERMISSIONS</b>	
Type	call-answer
Announcement Control	n
Outcalling	n
Priority Message	n
Broadcast	none
IMAPI Access	n
IMAPI Voice File Access	n
<b>INCOMING MAILBOX</b>	
Order	fifo
Category Order	nuo
New Message Retention Time	10
Old Message Retention Time	10
Unopened Message Retention Time	10
<b>OUTGOING MAILBOX</b>	
Order	fifo
Category Order	ufdan
File Cabinet Retention Time	10
Delivered/Nondeliverable Retention Time	10
<b>Voice Mail Message (seconds)</b>	
Maximum Length	300 sec.
Minimum Needed	32 sec.
<b>Call Answer Message (Seconds)</b>	
Maximum Length	120 sec.
Minimum Needed	8 sec.
End of Message Warning Time (seconds)	15
Maximum Mailing Lists	25
Total Entries in All Lists	250



## Worksheet C-9: Set Up Alarm Origination

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The project manager or the technician will input the information from this worksheet on the SYSTEM-PARAMETERS MAINTENANCE screen in installation [Task 10-1](#) in [Chapter 10](#). In [Task 10-1](#) you will call the TSC and have them add the customer to the database and test the Alarm Origination feature.

What is the name <sup>1</sup> of the DEFINITY AUDIX system? (Lucent Technologies identifier)	
What is the DEFINITY AUDIX system location?	
What is the telephone number the customer can call to report problems with the DEFINITY AUDIX system or to ask for help? In the United States this number is 1-800-242-2121.	
What is the automatic alarm reporting telephone number? This is the modem command string for automatic alarm referral calls generated by the DEFINITY AUDIX system. The INADS administrator will give this string to the installer.	
Will Alarm Origination be activated through the DEFINITY AUDIX system only (enter <b>audix only</b> ), through the switch only (enter <b>switch only</b> ), or both (enter <b>audix &amp; switch</b> ).	
What is the telephone number for the remote maintenance port?	
What is the modem initialization string (if the modem is not a US Robotics Sportster)	

- 
1. This is a unique name the TSC uses to access the system. The TSC can help in assigning this name. Once the name is assigned, only the TSC can change it. This name is not used by any other Lucent Technologies group or by the customer.

## Optional Features Worksheets

# D

---

The following worksheets are designed to help customers plan for any optional switch or DEFINITY AUDIX features they want to implement. Optional features include:

- AMIS Analog Networking and/or Message Delivery
- Automated Attendant
- Bulletin Board
- Outcalling
- Switch Recorded Announcement
- Digital networking port activation

**⇒ NOTE:**

To administer Digital Networking, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Digital Networking*, 585-300-534, for a complete set of worksheets.

You may administer these features on your own, or you may pay Lucent Technologies to administer them for you.

### **Worksheet D-1: Administering AMIS Analog Networking and Message Delivery**

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

To administer the AMIS Analog Networking and/or the Message Delivery you need to complete the following tables. See *AMIS Analog Networking*, 585-300-512, for more information.

You need the information in the following table to complete the SYSTEM-PARAMETERS ANALOG-NETWORK screen.

Country Code Enter the country code of the hunt group of the analog voice ports for the local DEFINITY AUDIX system.	
Area/Trunk Number Enter the area/trunk code of the hunt group of the analog voice ports for the local DEFINITY AUDIX system.	
Local Number Enter the local telephone number of the hunt group of the analog voice ports for the local DEFINITY AUDIX system.	
AMIS Analog Networking Incoming Allowed? (y/n)	
AMIS Analog Networking Outgoing Allowed? (y/n)	
AMIS Prefix This field is optional. The AMIS prefix simply identifies an address to the system as an AMIS Analog or Digital address.	
AMIS Protocol—Use 8 Minutes For Incoming Message Length 0? (y/n) If yes, the DEFINITY AUDIX system will assume messages of unknown length are actually eight minutes long.	
AMIS Loopback Test Mailbox Extension	

You will need the information in the following form to complete the SYSTEM-PARAMETERS OUTCALLING screen.

	Start Time	End Time	Interval	Max Simultaneous Ports <sup>1</sup>
1				
2				
3				

---

1. The maximum simultaneous ports includes ports for Outcalling, AMIS Analog Networking, and Message Delivery.

---

You need the information in the following table to complete the SYSTEM-PARAMETERS FEATURES screen.

Rescheduling Increments For Unsuccessful Message Delivery <sup>1</sup>

Increment	Days	Hours	Minutes
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
10			

---

1. For information on default values, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System Release 4.0 — Screens Reference*, 585-300-212.

**D** Optional Features Worksheets

*Administering AMIS Analog Networking and Message Delivery*

D-4

You need the information in the following tables to complete the MACHINE screen. Complete these tables for each remote machine to be administered on the local system.

Machine Name	
Machine Type (Valid entries are amisac, amisap, calld)	
Location	display
Voiced Name?	display
Extension Length	
Voice ID	display
Default Community	

Prefix	Start Extension	End Extension

Dial String: \_\_\_\_\_

Message Transmission Start Time	Message Transmission End Time

## Worksheet D-2: Automated Attendant

Date \_\_\_\_\_  
 Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_  
 Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

You need the following information to assign a hunt group on the switch for an automated attendant. See [“Automated Attendant Administration”](#) in [Chapter 6](#) for more information.

What extension do you want to assign to the attendant?	
What station type will you use? (Each automated attendant will use a station port unless you assign a hunt group.)	
What number do you want to use to identify the hunt group for the automated attendant?	

You will need the information in the following table to complete the SUBSCRIBER screen for each Automated Attendant. See *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration, 585-300-507* for automated attendant examples and other information.

Do you want Night Service to the Automated Attendant?	
If yes, do you want it from an incoming trunk or from a Listed Directory Number (LDN)	
Do you want Automated Attendant operation based on business schedules?	
Do you want Automated Attendant operation based on the holiday schedule?	
What would you like to name the automated attendant (for the system directory)?	
Do you want to allow the caller to transfer out of the attendant using <input type="checkbox"/> * <input type="checkbox"/> T ? (The Transfer Out of AUDIX feature must be enabled.)	

How many seconds do you want the system to wait for a response from the caller before timing out?	
Do you want to verify if the definition of an Automated Attendant menu tree is complete?	
Do you want to verify the operation of various Automated Attendant menu trees in operation at a customer site?	

For each telephone button (0–9) that is *not* the same as the first digit of the switch extensions (assuming this attendant is set up to go to a given extension), list the transfer extension. To go to an extension that begins with the same digit as the button, enter e. For each extension, indicate whether the caller should be transferred normally (T), should hear the subscriber’s call answer (CA), or should hear the system guest greeting (G). Also for each extension, include a descriptive comment.

Button	Extension or e	Transfer Normally (T) Call Answer (CA) Guest Greeting (G)	Comment
1			
2			
3			
4			
5			
6			
7			
8			
9			
0 timeout			

What would you like the attendant to say initially? (For example: *Thank you for calling Primary Propulsion Systems. Press 1 for Personnel, 2 for Accounting.*)

---



---



---



---



---



---

Record the attendant menu just as you would a personal greeting, using the automated attendant extension to log in. You can get a list of all your attendants by using the LIST ATTENDANTS screen.

## Worksheet D-3: Administering a Bulletin Board

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

You will need the information in the following table to complete the SUBSCRIBER screen for each bulletin board. You can also set up a class of service for bulletin boards using the COS form, and identify that class of service on the SUBSCRIBER form. See *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Administration*, 585-300-507 or *DEFINITY AUDIX System — R3.1 Screens Reference*, 585-300-211 for more information.

To what extension do you want the bulletin board assigned?	
What do you want to name the bulletin board (for the system directory)?	

If you have not set up a class of service for bulletin boards (using the COS screen), you must set the PERMISSIONS field to bulletin board.

What do you want the bulletin board to say initially?

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

## Worksheet D-4: Administering Outcalling

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

The information you supply here will be input on the SYSTEM-PARAMETERS OUTCALLING screen during cut-to-service administration.

	Start Time	End Time	Interval	Max Simultaneous Ports <sup>1</sup>
1				
2				
3				

- 
1. The maximum simultaneous ports includes ports for Outcalling, AMIS Analog Networking, and Message Delivery.

Initial Delay (minutes)

This is the number of minutes that must elapse after a message is delivered before the first outcalling attempt is made.

Maximum Number Digits

The maximum length telephone number subscribers can specify for Outcalling. If subscribers are going to have outcalls placed to pagers, set this to **29**.

## Worksheet D-5: Administering Switch Recorded Announcement

---

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

To administer a Switch Recorded Announcement you need to complete the following table. See [“Switch Recorded Announcement”](#) in [Chapter 6](#) for more information.

To what extension do you want the switch announcement assigned?	
Will an Lucent Technologies TN750 Announcement circuit pack or a customer-provided external system be used?	
What COR do you want to assign this extension?	
What do you want to name the switch recorded announcement?	
How long do you want the queue to be?	

What message do you want callers to hear if all DEFINITY AUDIX ports are busy?

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

---

For information on activating the digital networking port, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System* — *Digital Networking*, 585-300-534.

## Terminal Configuration



---

For a DEFINITY AUDIX system, at least one system-access terminal is required for administration and local maintenance. This terminal should be connected to port A of the DEFINITY AUDIX system. A second, optional terminal can be connected to port B if the system is operating in display set mode. The required terminal can be connected to the DEFINITY AUDIX system in one of the following ways:

- Direct connection
- Via modems or data modules
- Via asynchronous data units (ADUs)

Two RS-232 cables are included with every DEFINITY AUDIX system to connect the terminals. Normally, these cables have a length of 20 feet. However, the cables can be ordered in lengths of up to 50 feet.

### Worksheet E-1: Terminals

Date \_\_\_\_\_

Prepared By \_\_\_\_\_

Contact Telephone Number \_\_\_\_\_

To the AE:

Complete this worksheet with the customer before configuring and ordering the DEFINITY AUDIX system. For more information about supported terminals and other peripherals, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System — System Description*, 585-300-214.

Options	Terminal 1	Terminal 2 (DP mode only)
<p>What type of terminal do you want to use?</p> <p>The customer can use a 715 with the DEFINITY AUDIX system. The 715 will emulate any other Lucent Technologies administration terminal, such as a 513 or a 615. The customer can also use a PC with an emulation package, such as G3-MA or DNA. For information about required emulation packages, see <i>DEFINITY AUDIX System — System Description</i>, 585-300-214.</p>		
<p>How do you want the administration terminal connected to the DEFINITY AUDIX system?</p> <p>You can implement any of the following:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Directly via cables</li> <li>■ Via modems</li> <li>■ Via data modules</li> </ul> <p>Options: one 7400A and one 7400B,</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Via asynchronous data units (ADU)</li> </ul>		
<p>If connecting via a modem or 7400 data module, what is the phone number of the connection?</p>		
<p>Do you want to order a parallel printer for the terminal?</p> <p>Options are the 470 series printer, 570 series printer, or 580 series printer.</p>		
<p>What length cables would you like for the terminals?</p> <p>The default is 20 feet. Options are 5, 10, 30, 40, or 50</p>		

# Migration Procedure

# F

---

A customer with DEFINITY® AUDIX® 3.2 or earlier can migrate to DEFINITY AUDIX version 4.0 from either Control Link (CL) integration or Display Set (DS) integration. In either case, DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 connects to the existing hardware via a new system adaptor cable, and in most cases, only minor changes need to be administered to the switch and the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 supports a maximum of 12 voice ports with no networking port, or 8 voice ports with 1 networking port. If the existing system includes any of the following configurations, the system must either be upgraded to an Intuity Audix or modified to eliminate excess voice ports and networking ports:

- 2 networking ports
- 1 networking port with more than 8 voice ports
- No networking ports and more than 12 voice ports

When you migrate data from the existing system, however, you must administer changes to the DEFINITY AUDIX voice group and to the voice ports on the switch.

This migration procedure requires that the TN568 circuit pack of the DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 system be installed in the same slot that was occupied by the previous DEFINITY AUDIX system. If DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 is installed in a different slot, contact the remote service center.



**CAUTION:**

*Migrating DEFINITY AUDIX data from an existing system to a new system overwrites any existing data on the new system, including any data previously migrated.*

## **Materials and Information Needed**

---

You need the following items to complete the migration from a previous version of DEFINITY AUDIX system to version 4.0:

- Migration Checklist
- DEFINITY AUDIX installation hardware
- External Tandberg tape drive unit (shipped from the remote service center)
- Short SCSI cable
- Long SCSI cable
- One blank Tandberg 525 Mb tape for DEFINITY AUDIX data backups (shipped from the Remote Maintenance Center)
  - for nightly and weekly back-up data
  - for voice back-up data
  - for announcement sets

In addition to this document, you will need the following books:

- The Lucent™ DEFINITY AUDIX R4.0 Maintenance book
- The Lucent DEFINITY AUDIX R4.0 Administration book
- The installation book for the customer's switch

## Migration Checklist

The table below shows the migration tasks and the sequence in which they occur.

**Table F-1. Migration Checklist**

Task	Description	Page	✓
1.	<a href="#">Shut Down the DEFINITY AUDIX System</a>	<a href="#">page F-3</a>	
2.	<a href="#">Export the Switch Voice Ports</a>	<a href="#">page F-4</a>	
3.	<a href="#">Connect the External Tandberg Tape Drive</a>	<a href="#">page F-6</a>	
4.	<a href="#">Back-Up the DEFINITY AUDIX Data</a>	<a href="#">page F-7</a>	
5.	<a href="#">Remove the Existing DEFINITY AUDIX System</a>	<a href="#">page F-12</a>	
6.	<a href="#">Install DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0</a>	<a href="#">page F-13</a>	
7.	<a href="#">Restore the Existing Data</a>	<a href="#">page F-17</a>	
8.	<a href="#">Remove the Tape Drive</a>	<a href="#">page F-20</a>	
9.	<a href="#">Verify the DEFINITY AUDIX Administration</a>	<a href="#">page F-20</a>	
10.	<a href="#">Administer Changes to the Switch</a>	<a href="#">page F-23</a>	
11.	<a href="#">Complete Additional Migration Tasks</a>	<a href="#">page F-29</a>	

### Task F-1: Shut Down the DEFINITY AUDIX System

Shut down the DEFINITY AUDIX system before you export the voice ports on the switch.

- On the back of the switch, disconnect the amphenol connector of the alarm origination cable from the back plane.  
 The alarm cable connects to the middle slot on the DEFINITY AUDIX system. This action prevents the system from sending spurious alarms during the course of the upgrade.
- At the DEFINITY AUDIX administration terminal, log on to the DEFINITY AUDIX system using the craft login.  
 The system displays a blank DEFINITY AUDIX Administration screen.
- Enter **reset system shutdown** to shut down the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
- Verify that the DEFINITY AUDIX system is shut down.
- Continue with [Task F-2](#).

## Task F-2: Export the Switch Voice Ports

You must turn off the switch voice ports before you back up DEFINITY AUDIX data. Otherwise, DEFINITY AUDIX data does not migrate properly.

To turn off the voice ports at the switch:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change station extension** for the first voice port in the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group.

The switch displays the Station screen.

```
change station 12007                                     Page 1 of 4

                                STATION
Extension: 12007          BCC: 0
Type: 7405D              Lock Messages: n          COR: 1
Port: 1A0507            Security Code: _        COS: 1
Name: AUDIX TRANSFER    Coverage Path: 20

FEATURE OPTIONS
LWC Reception? msa-spe          Coverage Msg Retrieval? y
LWC Activation? y                Auto Answer? n
SMDR Privacy? _____        Data Restriction? n
Redirect Notification? n         Idle Appearance Preference? n
Bridged Call Alerting? n

                                Restrict Last Appearance? n

Data Module? n

Display Module? y                Coverage Module? n
```

Figure F-1. Change Station Screen

2. Enter **x** in the Port field, and press **(ENTER)**.  
The cursor returns to the command line.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for each voice port.
4. Continue with [Task F-3](#).

## Task F-3: Remove the Voice Ports from the Hunt Group

To remove the ports from the Hunt Group:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change hunt-group number** where *number* is the number of the hunt group for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

The switch displays the Hunt Group screen.

2. Press **(NEXTPAGE)** until the switch displays the Group Member Assignments screen.

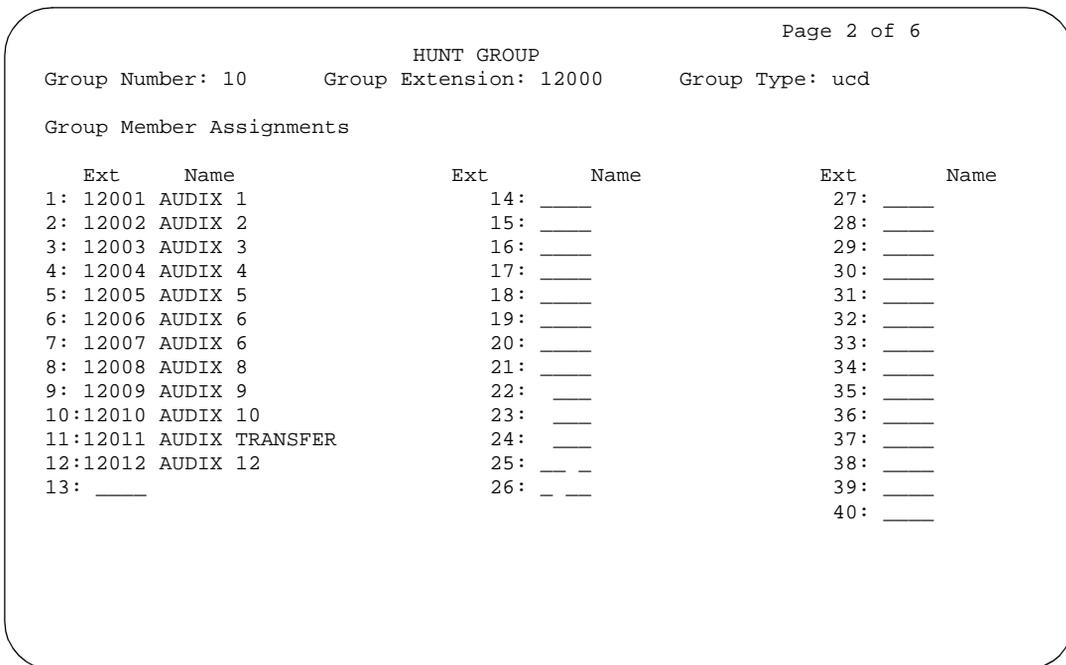


Figure F-2. Example of the Hunt Group Group Member Assignments Screen, (G3i/G3s/G3vs)

3. Remove the all of the ports from the Group Member Assignments screen.
4. Press **(ENTER)** to save the changes to the hunt group.
5. Continue with [Task F-4](#).

## Task F-4: Connect the External Tandberg Tape Drive

---

An external tape drive must be connected to the existing DEFINITY AUDIX system to record the system data. The tape drive will then be connected to DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 and the data transferred to the new system.

To connect the external tape drive:

1. Remove the DEFINITY AUDIX system from the host switch.
2. Remove the SCSI cable and clips ([Figure F-4](#)) that connect the DEFINITY AUDIX tape drive to the Alarm Board (TN2169 or TN2170) and remove the tape drive from the Alarm Board. For details on removing the tape drive, see the Maintenance manual.

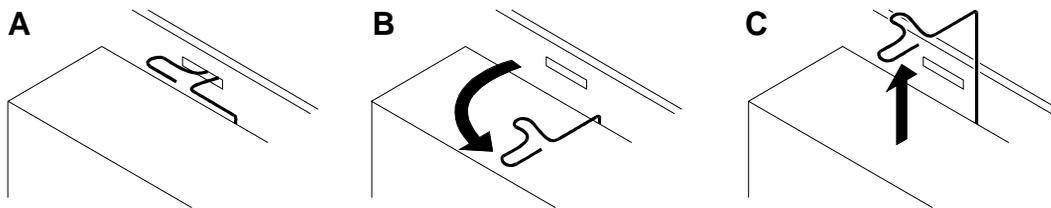


Figure F-3. Remove the Retaining Clips from the Tape Drive

3. Locate the short, flat SCSI cable from the migration kit. Route the cable into the front of the circuit pack, through the opening left by the removed tape drive. Position the cable with the red edge down. Attach the cable to the tape drive connector on the Alarm Board.
4. Connect one end of the long cable (found in the migration kit) to the external tape drive (also found in the migration kit). Connect the other end of the long cable to the short SCSI cable you connected to the Alarm Board.
5. Apply AC power to the external tape drive and turn it on. Insert a new tape (525Mb or 2Gb) into the drive. (Make sure the tape is not write-protected.)
6. Insert the DEFINITY AUDIX system back into the switch and allow the system to boot up.
7. Continue with [Task F-5](#).



## 2. Enter **reset system oa&m**

The system displays the Reset System OA&M screen:

```
denvercl Active Alarms: A Thresholds: none Logins: 1
reset system oa&m Page 1 of 1
RESET SYSTEM OA&M

WARNING - Pressing [Enter] now causes the system to be reset to the OA&M state.
The reset cannot be cancelled after [Enter] has been pressed.

The reset will be performed in a camp-on manner.

Press [Cancel] to avoid doing the reset.

enter command: reset system oa&m
1Cancel 2Refresh 3Enter 4ClearFld 5Help 6Choices 7NextPage 8PrevPage
```

Figure F-5. Reset System OA&M Screen

### 3. Press **F3** (Enter).

The system stops all calls and the cursor returns to the DEFINITY AUDIX login prompt.

### 4. Login as craft.

### 5. Enter **add tape**

### 6. Enter a new name in the Volume Name field and press **F3** (Enter).

### 7. Press **F3** (Enter) again to confirm.



#### **CAUTION:**

*All contents of the tape are erased during this process.*

The system saves the new name and the cursor returns to the command line. This process can take up to 20 minutes.



#### **NOTE:**

The back-up of DEFINITY AUDIX data takes between 30 minutes to several hours, depending on the size of the files. As a rule-of-thumb, the backup takes approximately 1 minute per megabyte of data.

8. Type **save nightly** and press **[ENTER]**.

The system displays the Save Nightly screen:

---

```
denverc1 Active Alarms: A Thresholds: none Logins: 1
save nightly                                     Page 1 of 1
          SAVE NIGHTLY

Status of most recent "save nightly" backup: completed

Press [ENTER] to execute or press [CANCEL] to abort
enter command: save nightly
1Cancel 2Refresh 3Enter 4ClearFld 5Help 6Choices 7NextPage 8PrevPage
```

Figure F-6. Save Nightly Screen

9. Press **[F3]** (Enter) to run the nightly backup.

The back-up begins and the cursor returns to the command line.

**⇒ NOTE:**

Check the status periodically using the **status tape** command. You can also use the **display admin** command to clear the adm "A" on the status line.

10. When the nightly back-up is complete (the elapsed time depends on the size of the system), enter **save weekly**

The system displays the Save Weekly screen:

---

```
denverc1 Active Alarms: A Thresholds: none Logins: 1
save weekly Page 1 of 1
SAVE WEEKLY

Status of most recent "save weekly" backup: completed

Press [ENTER] to execute or press [CANCEL] to abort
enter command: save weekly
1Cancel 2Refresh 3Enter 4ClearFld 5Help 6Choices 7NextPage 8PrevPage
```

---

Figure F-7. Save Weekly Screen

11. Press **[F3]** (Enter) to run the weekly back-up.

The backup begins and the cursor returns to the command line.

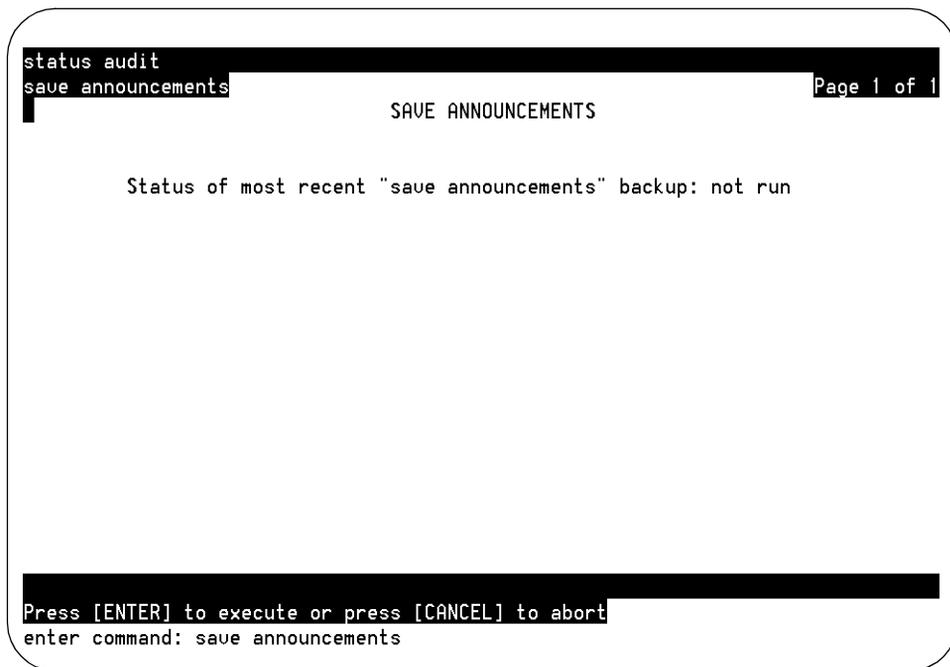
**⇒ NOTE:**

Check the status periodically using the **status tape** command or the **display admin** command.

12. When the weekly back-up is complete (the elapsed time depends on the size of the system), determine the next step:
  - If the system includes customized announcements, continue with [Step 13](#).
  - If the system does not include customized announcements, continue with [Step 15](#).
13. Enter **save announcements**

The system displays the Save Announcements screen:

---



```
status audit
save announcements                                     Page 1 of 1
                                     SAVE ANNOUNCEMENTS

Status of most recent "save announcements" backup: not run

Press [ENTER] to execute or press [CANCEL] to abort
enter command: save announcements
```

---

**Figure F-8. Save Announcements Screen**

14. Press **F3** (Enter) to run the announcement back-up.

The backup begins and the cursor returns to the command line.



**NOTE:**

Check the status periodically using the **status tape** command or the **display admin** command.

15. When the announcement back-up is complete (the elapsed time depends on the size of the system), enter **save voice**

The system displays the Save Voice screen:

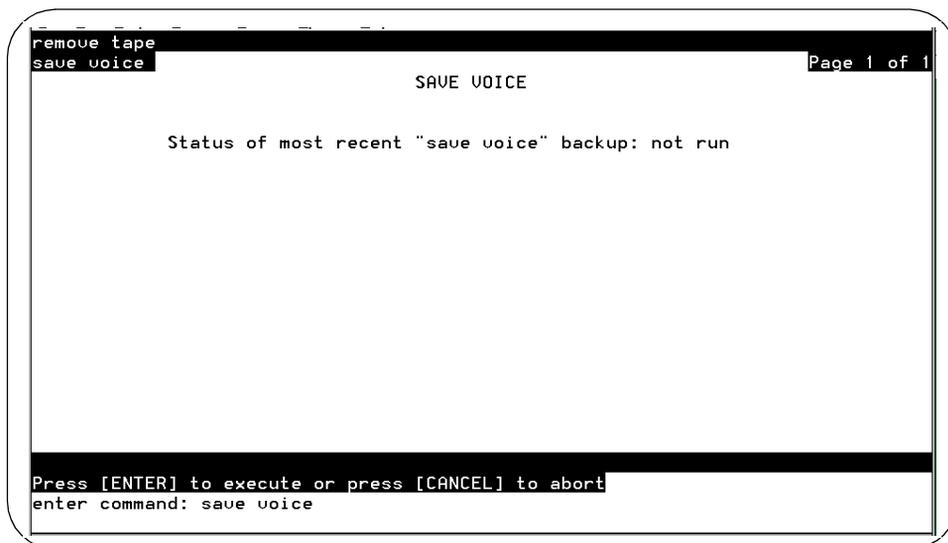


Figure F-9. Save Voice Screen

16. Press **[F3]** (Enter) to run the voice back-up.

The back-up begins and the cursor returns to the command line.

**⇒ NOTE:**

Check the status periodically using the **status tape** command or the **display admin** command.

17. When the voice backup is complete (this can take a few minutes to several hours depending on the amount of voice data), continue with [Task F-6](#).

## Task F-6: Remove the Existing DEFINITY AUDIX System

1. Enter **reset system shutdown** to shut down the existing DEFINITY AUDIX system.
2. Note which slots the DEFINITY AUDIX alarm board (third system slot) and multi-function board (fourth system slot) occupy in the switch.
3. Verify that the DEFINITY AUDIX is shut down, then remove it from the switch carrier.
4. Disconnect the short SCSI cable from the DEFINITY AUDIX MFB.
5. On the back of the switch, label each of the cables that connects to the the alarm cable and the MFB cable on the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

6. Disconnect the terminal, control link, LAN, alarm, and phone line cables from both the alarm cable and the MFB cable.
7. Remove the existing alarm cable and MFB cable.
8. Continue with [Task F-7](#).

## **Task F-7: Install DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0**

1. Install the new system adaptor cable on the back of the switch.



**NOTE:**

The new system has only adaptor cable that connects to the switch.

Attach the male D-type amphenol connector on the new system adapter cable to the slot previously occupied by the old DEFINITY AUDIX multifunction board.



**CAUTION:**

*You must connect the adapter cable directly to the port connector on the switch. If you install another cable between the switch and the cables, the DEFINITY AUDIX system will not operate correctly.*

2. Reconnect all the peripheral hardware cables to the system adaptor cable. See [Table F-2](#) for the correct configuration.

**Table F-2. System Adaptor Cable Connections**

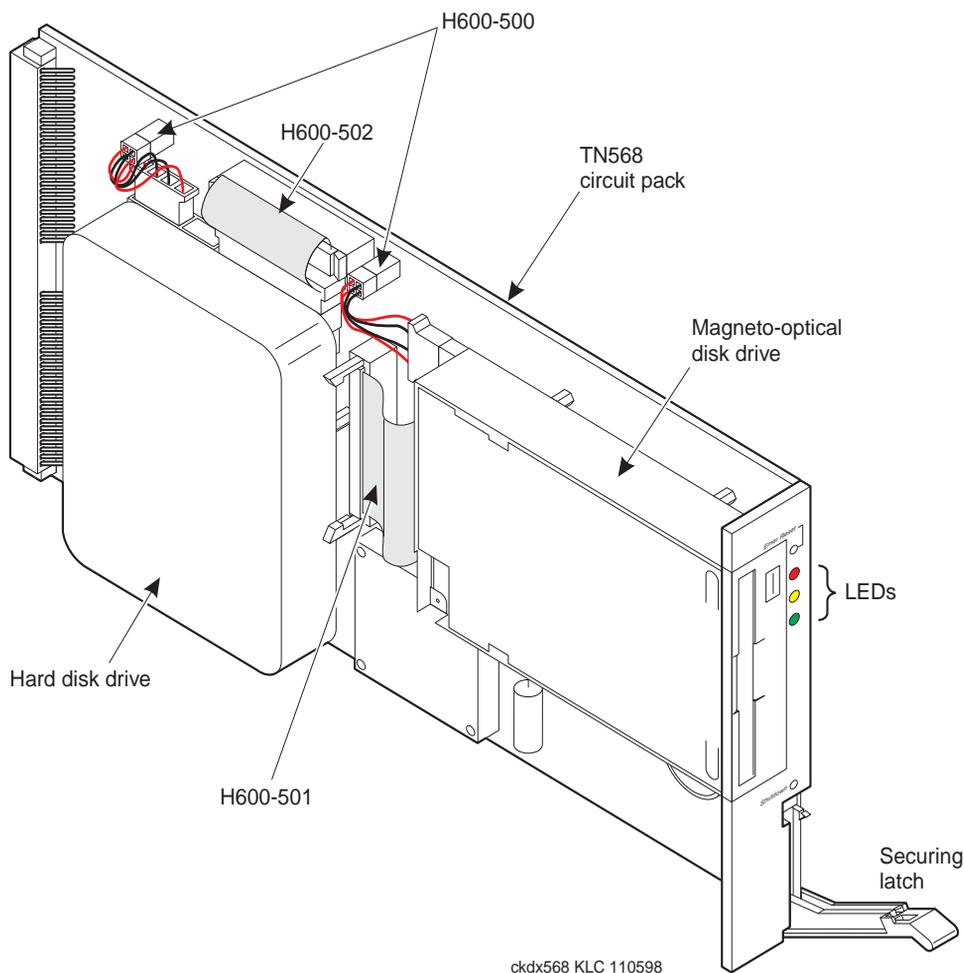
<b>System Cable connector</b>	<b>Hardware connection</b>
Port A (Female RS-232)	Administration terminal
Port B (Female RS-232)	Control link or optional terminal
Port C (Female RS-232)	External modem
Female RJ45	LAN
Amphenol	Alarm connection

3. Install the external modem for remote maintenance and alarms. See [Task 2-2](#) in [Chapter 2](#) for instructions to connect it to the DEFINITY AUDIX system. This modem replaces the internal modem used by previous versions of DEFINITY AUDIX.
4. Unpack the DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 system.

**CAUTION:**

*Be careful when handling the new system. The power cable to the MO-drive is fragile and can easily break.*

5. Disconnect the SCSI cable (H600-501 in [Figure F-10](#)) from the SCSI bus connector on the TN568 circuit pack and from the MO-disk drive.



**Figure F-10. DEFINITY AUDIX System Assembly**

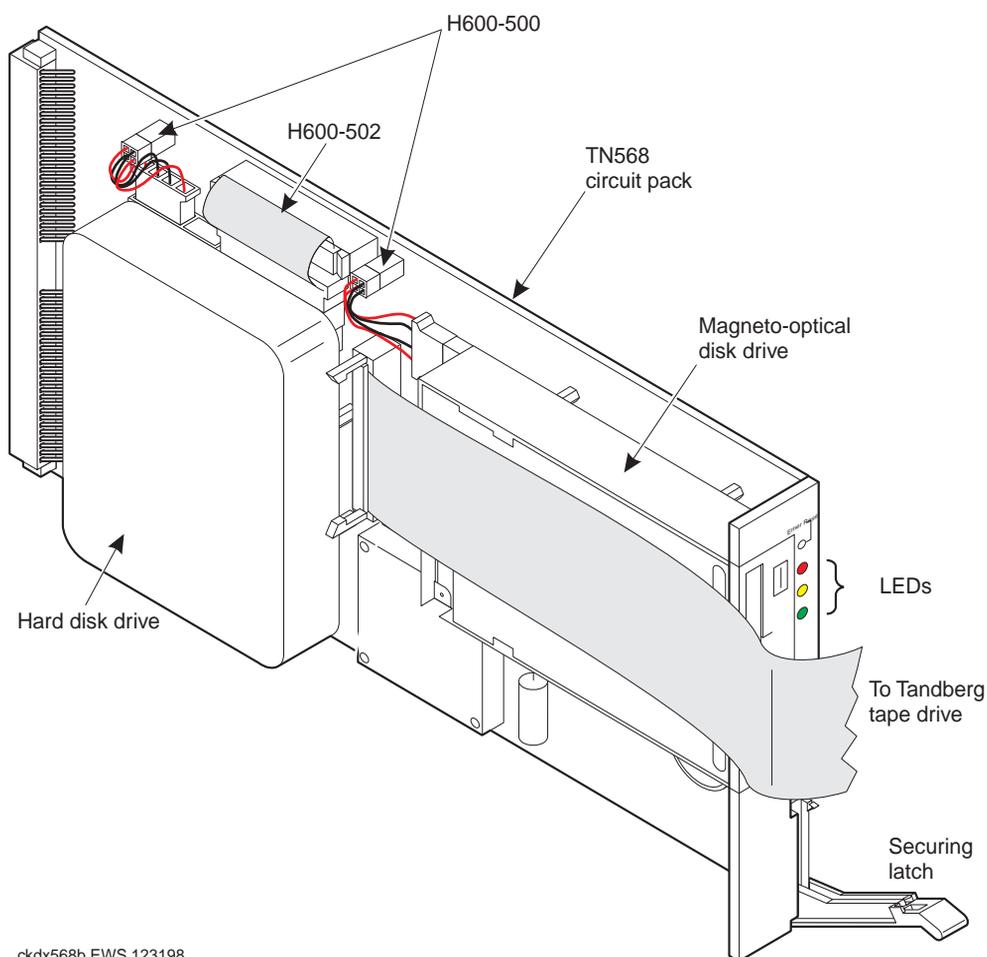
6. Attach the SCSI cable from the Tandberg tape drive to the DEFINITY AUDIX system ([Figure F-11](#)).

- a. Firmly seat the SCSI cable from the external tape drive, red edge up, into the SCSI bus connector on the TN568 circuit pack. To seat the cable, you must lift the retaining clips on the SCSI bus connector away from the TN568 circuit pack.

**⚠ CAUTION:**

*You must press the SCSI cable firmly into the connector. The external tape drive will not function if this cable is improperly seated.*

- b. Route the cable along the left side of the circuit pack.



ckdx568b EWS 123198

**Figure F-11. DEFINITY AUDIX System with SCSI Cable Attached to External Tape Drive**

7. Insert the DEFINITY AUDIX system into the switch cabinet.
  - a. At the front of the switch carrier, locate the slot formerly occupied by the multi-function board of the previous DEFINITY AUDIX system.
  - b. Hold the DEFINITY AUDIX system assembly by the outside edge of the faceplate and press the long SCSI cable against the left side of the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
  - c. Line up the TN568 circuit pack with the bottom guide of the slot you located in [Step a](#).
  - d. With the assembly properly aligned in the slot, insert it with a single firm push, and lock it in place by pushing up the securing latch on the faceplate.



**WARNING:**

*If the switch is powered on, the DEFINITY AUDIX system automatically boots up when seated in the slot. Damage to the hard disk could occur if the assembly is removed while booting. Therefore, do not adjust or reinsert the assembly.*

8. As the DEFINITY AUDIX system boots up, watch the three LEDs on the faceplate.

If the DEFINITY AUDIX system does not come up to the AUDIX state (Red-off, Green-off, yellow-on) within 10 minutes, write down the states displayed on the LEDs, and refer to the associated troubleshooting procedures in *DEFINITY AUDIX System — Maintenance*, 585-300-121.



**NOTE:**

If the system passes through the AUDIX state but ends with the following state:

Green - off, Yellow - on, Red - on (or flashing),

you can ignore it at this time. This state indicates a software error that probably resulted from a port board alarm. The alarm should turn off when you administer the ports and activate the optional features.

9. Once DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 boots up successfully, administer the external modem and check that it is functioning properly. See "[Modem Option Settings \(for Port C Modems\)](#)" in [Appendix H](#) for instructions.
10. Continue with [Task F-8](#).

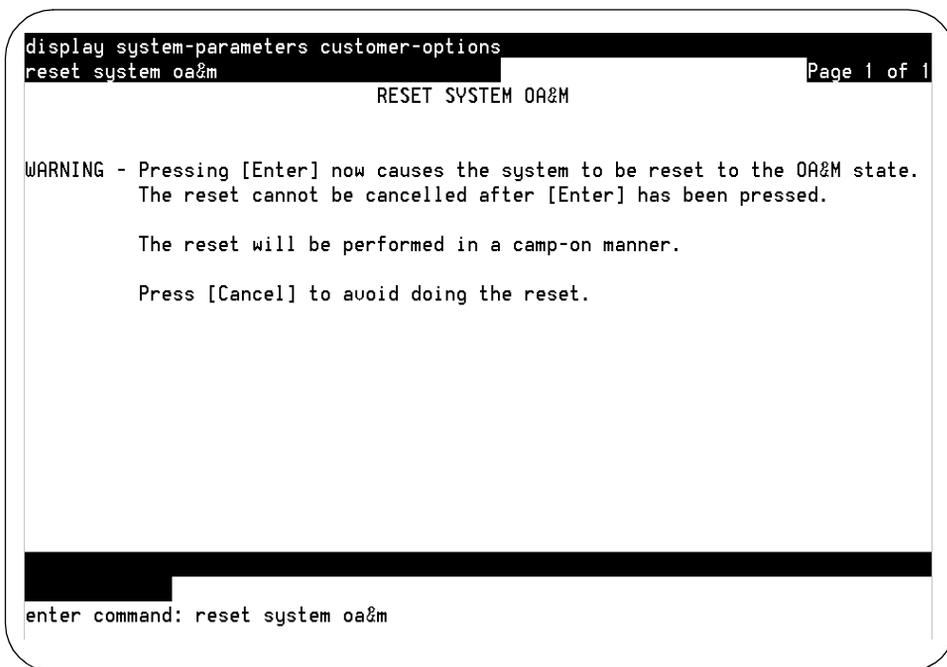
## Task F-8: Restore the Existing Data

Once the system is running, you must restore the data you backed up in [Task F-5](#).

To restore the data:

1. At the DEFINITY AUDIX administration terminal, log in as *craft*.
2. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **reset system oa&m**

The system displays the Reset System OA&M screen.



```
display system-parameters customer-options
reset system oa&m                                     Page 1 of 1
                                     RESET SYSTEM OA&M

WARNING - Pressing [Enter] now causes the system to be reset to the OA&M state.
          The reset cannot be cancelled after [Enter] has been pressed.

          The reset will be performed in a camp-on manner.

          Press [Cancel] to avoid doing the reset.

enter command: reset system oa&m
```

Figure F-12. Reset System OA&M Screen

3. Press **F3** (Enter).

The system reboots and returns to the DEFINITY AUDIX login prompt.

**⇒ NOTE:**

Do not log in at the first login prompt. The system displays the first prompt then continues the reset. Wait until the system displays the login prompt for several minutes before proceeding.

4. Log in as *craft*.
5. Enter **add tape**

The system displays the Tape screen and displays the field values as it reads the tape.

 **NOTE:**

If the system does not recognize the **add tape** command, the SCSI cable from the external drive may not be properly connected. If this occurs, follow the procedure below to re-seat the cable.

- a. Shut down the system and remove the DEFINITY AUDIX system from the switch carrier.
  - b. Re-seat the cable to both the tape drive and the TN568 circuit pack.
  - c. Insert the system back into the switch carrier and allow it to boot up.
  - d. Log in as *craft*, then repeat [Step 5](#).
6. As the system reads the tape, it displays two warning messages. These messages are normal and do not indicate a problem with the system. After each message, press **↵** (Enter) to continue.

 **NOTE:**

It can take several minutes for the system to read the tape. Check the status periodically using the **status tape** command.

7. After the tape drive becomes idle, wait at least 2 minutes before continuing.
8. After the system is idle for two minutes, enter **restore backups**

After several minutes, the system displays the Backup screen with a numbered list of all the backups on the tape.

```
display backups Page 1 of 1
                                     BACKUPS

Backup Number to Restore:

VOLUME LABEL:
  Volume Label Type: backup
  Volume Label Name: upgrade.backups
  Software Release: Release 4.0, Issue 1
  Machine Name: drmf16
  Creation Date: 03/01/99

VOLUME CONTENTS:
Number      Type              Name              Date              Time
 1   announcements   All              03/01/99         12:21
 2     voice         All              03/01/99         12:19
 3 manual_weekly    All              03/01/99         12:16
 4 manual_nightly  All              03/01/99         12:14

enter command:
```

Figure F-13. Restore Backups Screen

9. If you backed up custom announcements, enter the number corresponding to the backup file of the announcement set.

The system restores the announcement sets.

**⇒ NOTE:**

This process takes approximately 15 minutes per installed language.

10. When the system finishes restoring the announcement sets, enter the number corresponding to the backup file for the voice mail.

The system restores the voice mail files.

11. When the system finishes restoring the voice mail files, enter the number corresponding to the backup file of the weekly data.

The system restores the weekly backup file.

12. When the system finishes restoring the weekly backup, Enter the number corresponding to the nightly backup file.

The system restores the nightly backup file.

**⇒ NOTE:**

You must restore the nightly backup file last. The nightly backup performs audits to ensure the system works properly.



**CAUTION:**

*Restoring the old configuration on the new system can generate switch alarms and cause minor switch problems.*

13. Enter **reset system restart** to start up the DEFINITY AUDIX voice messaging system.
14. Call the remote service center to administer the default values for DEFINITY AUDIX and restore the system to its proper configuration.
15. Continue with [Task F-9](#).

## **Task F-9: Remove the Tape Drive**

---

Before you administer the new DEFINITY AUDIX and place the system in service, you must first remove the Tandberg tape drive and re-connect the MO-drive.

1. Remove the tape from the Tandberg tape drive.
2. Enter **reset system shutdown** to shut down the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
3. Verify that the DEFINITY AUDIX is shut down, then remove it from the switch carrier.
4. Disconnect the long SCSI cable from the TN568 circuit pack, and re-connect the MO-disk drive SCSI cable (H600-501 in [Figure F-10](#)).
5. Slide the DEFINITY AUDIX system back into the switch carrier and lock it into place.
6. Wait for the system to completely boot up, then log in as craft.
7. Continue with [Task F-10](#).

## **Task F-10: Verify the DEFINITY AUDIX Administration**

---

This task is required for all migrations to verify the customer options and make necessary changes to the DEFINITY AUDIX administration.

Customer options are normally activated before the system is shipped. Complete the first section of this task, "[Display Customer Options](#)", to verify that the settings on the System-Parameters Customer-Options screen are correct.

### **Task F-10A: Display Customer Options**

1. At the DEFINITY AUDIX administration terminal, enter **display system-parameters customer options**

The system displays the System-Parameters Customer-Options screen.

```
drnfb15 Active Alarms: m A Thresholds: none Logins: 2
change system-parameters customer-options Page 1 of 2
SYSTEM-PARAMETERS CUSTOMER-OPTIONS

Port Emulation Type: tn2181
Switch Integration Type: display-set
Maximum Number of Voice Ports: 12
Maximum Number of Digital Networking Ports: 0
AMIS Analog Networking? y
Multilingual? n
Maximum Number of IMAPI Sessions: 32
Hours of Voice Storage Purchased: 40
Total Hours on Disk: 95

enter command:
```

Figure F-14. System-Parameters Customer-Options Screen

2. Check that the values of the following fields on the System-Parameters Customer-Options screen are correct.
  - Port Emulation Type
  - Switch Integration Type
  - Maximum Number of Voice Ports
  - Maximum Number of Digital Networking Ports
  - AMIS Analog Networking?
  - Multilingual?
  - Maximum Number of IMAPI Sessions
  - Hours of Voice Storage Purchased
3. If the value in any of these fields needs to be changed, call the remote service center.
4. Continue with [Task F-10B](#).

## Task F-10B: Verify the Voice Port Configuration

The DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports and extensions must reflect the new configuration required by the migration.

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **change voice-group** and press `RETURN`.

The system displays the Voice Group screen

```

drmfB15      Active      Alarms: m A  Thresholds: none      Logins: 2
change voice-group                                     Page 1 of 1
                VOICE GROUP

      Member  Port  Extension      Member  Port  Extension
      1  01C0601  64001          2  01C0602  64002
      3  01C0603  64003          4  01C0604  64004
      5  01C0605  64005          6  01C0606  64006
      7  01C0607  64007          8  01C0608  64008
      9  01C0609  64009         10  01C0610  64010
     11  01C0611  64011         12  01C0612  64012

enter command: change voice-group
    
```

Figure F-15. Change Voice-Group Screen

2. Verify that the port locations and extensions match those required for the migration, and that the number of ports is correct for the new system.



**NOTE:**

DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 supports a maximum of 12 voice ports with no networking port, or 8 voice ports with 1 networking port.

3. If you moved the DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack, change the port names to identify the new port locations.
4. Press `F3` (Enter) to save the changes.
5. Continue with [Task F-10C](#).

### Task F-10C: Verify the Subscribers

1. With the cursor on the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, type **list subscribers** and press `RETURN`.

The system displays the List Subscriber screen.

2. Verify that all subscribers are listed on the new system.
3. If any entries are missing or incorrect, see the DEFINITY AUDIX R4.0 Maintenance book to correct the problem.
4. Continue with [Task F-11](#).

### Task F-11: Administer Changes to the Switch

---

The port emulation of DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 is quite different than previous versions of the system. Most switches recognize previous versions of DEFINITY AUDIX in its "native" mode. In the native mode, the switch recognizes the circuit pack of the DEFINITY AUDIX system as itself and reserves the correct number of slots for the system (2 slots for DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0, and 5 slots for previous versions). Native mode emulation helps service technicians quickly recognize a DEFINITY AUDIX system when diagnosing alarms or other problems. See the table, "[Summary of Integrations, Emulations, and Capacities](#)" at the beginning of [Chapter 4](#) for a list of switches and the type of emulation.

All switches with R6 software or less recognize DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 in the "non-native" mode. Thus when you migrate to DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0 in these switches, the emulation often changes from native to non-native. This change affects the recognition of the circuit pack and the administration of the stations.

Complete the following steps to ensure proper administration of the switch for the new system.

#### Task F-11A: Determine the Number of Voice Ports

Before you administer the voice ports, you must first determine the correct number of ports to administer on the switch.

1. Use the table below to determine the number of ports to administer on the switch:

Switch	Old System		New System		Change
	Emulation	Number of Ports	Emulation	Number of Ports	
G1, G3V1, System 75, or G3i-Global (digital port)	TN746 (analog ports)	1-16	TN746 (analog ports)	1-12	delete ports 13 to 16 if necessary
	TN754 (digital ports)	8	TN754	8	no change
G3V2 or greater	TN754	8	TN2181	12	add ports 9 to 12
	TN2181	16	TN2181	12	delete ports 13 to 16

- Note the change in the number of voice ports from the old to the new system.
- Continue with [Task F-11B](#).

### Task F-11B: Administer the Voice Port Station Screen

The sequence and steps for administering the voice port station screens depends on the change in the number of voice ports between the old and the new system.

- Review the [Table F-3](#) to determine the relevant instructions for your system.

**Table F-3. Instructions for Changing the Station Screens of the Voice Ports**

No Change in Voice ports	Increasing the Voice Ports from 8 to 12	Decreasing the Voice Ports from 16 to 12
1. Add the port name back to each of the voice ports ( <a href="#">Task F-11B2</a> ). No other changes are necessary.	1. Duplicate port 8 to create port 12 ( <a href="#">Task F-11B1</a> ). 2. Duplicate Port 1 to create ports 9 to 11 ( <a href="#">Task F-11B1</a> ). 3. Change each of the station screens ( <a href="#">Task F-11B2</a> ).	1. Change port 12 ( <a href="#">Task F-11B2</a> ). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ Type the port location in the Port field, and type <b>y</b> in the Restrict Last Appearance field on page 1 of the Station screen.</li> <li>■ Set button 10 to <b>call-appr</b> on the Call Appearance screen</li> </ul> 2. Change ports 1 to 11 ( <a href="#">Task F-11B2</a> ). 3. Delete stations 13 through 16 ( <a href="#">Task F-11B3</a> ).

2. Determine your next step:
  - To increase the number of voice ports, continue with [Task F-11B1](#).
  - For any other procedure, continue with [Task F-11B2](#).

### Task F-11B1: Duplicate Voice Port Stations

To duplicate voice ports:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **duplicate station extension**, where *extension* is the extension of the station you want to copy.
2. Create the voice ports specified in [Table F-3](#).
3. Change the Port and Name field for each voice port.
4. Press **(ENTER)** to save the new voice ports.

### Task F-11B2: Change Voice Port Stations

To change the voice port stations:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change station extension**, where *extension* is the extension number of the voice port you want to change.
2. Use the entries in the table below to change the following Station screen fields:

**Table F-4. Station Screen Entries for DEFINITY AUDIX Voice Ports**

Field	Entry
Type	System 75, G1, G3V1 with analog port emulation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>2500</b></li> </ul> System 75, G1, G3V1G3V2-V4, R5, R6 with digital port emulation <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>7405D</b></li> </ul> G3R7 or greater <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>ADX16D</b></li> </ul>
Port	The digital port equipment location of the DEFINITY AUDIX system TN568 circuit pack on the switch. Re-enter the 5 to 6 character field you "x"ed out in <a href="#">Task F-2</a> (for example, <b>1A0501</b> ).
Name	If you changed the number of administered ports from 16 to 12, or from 16 to 8, enter the name AUDIX TRANSFER (all capital letters) for voice port 11 if administering 12-ports (TN2181 or TN746), or for voice port 7 if administering 8-ports (TN754).  All other voice port names remain the same.
Restrict Last Appearance	12-port emulation (TN2181) <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>■ <b>n</b> for voice ports 5 through 11.</li> <li>■ <b>y</b> for voice ports 1 through 4 and port 12. Call appearance 10 on voice port 12 should not receive incoming calls since other voice ports have a bridged appearance to call appearance 10 of voice port 12. An incoming call to this appearance would cause all voice ports to ring.</li> </ul>

3. Press **NEXTPAGE** until the Call Appearances screen appears.
4. Set the BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS fields as follows:
  - 8-port emulation:
    - For voice port 8, set all ten BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS to **call-appr**
    - For ports 1 through 7, do the following:

- a. Set the first nine BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS to **call-appr**
  - b. Set the tenth BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS to **bridg-appr XXXX** where **XXXX** equals the extension number of voice port 8.
- 12-port emulation:
- For ports 1 through 4 and port 12, set all ten BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS to **call-appr**
  - For ports 5 through 11, do the following:
    - a. Set the first nine BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS to **call-appr**
    - b. Set the tenth BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS to **bridg-appr XXXX** where **XXXX** equals the extension number of voice port 12.
5. Press **(ENTER)** to save the Station screen changes.
  6. Continue with [Task F-11B3](#).

### Task F-11B3: Delete the Voice Ports

If you migrated to a system that has fewer voice ports than the old system, you must delete the station entries of the excess voice ports. For instance, if the old system has 16 ports, and the new one has 12, you must delete the stations for ports 13 through 16.

To delete the voice ports:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **remove station number** where *number* is the extension of the voice port you want to delete.  
The switch displays the station screen for this port.
2. Review the station screen to ensure it corresponds to the voice port you want to remove.
3. If this is the correct voice port, press **(ENTER)**.  
The switch displays the following message:  

```
command successfully completed.
```
4. Repeat [Task F-11B3](#) to delete other voice ports you removed from the hunt group.
5. Repeat steps 1 through 5 for the other voice ports you need to change.
6. Continue with [Task F-11C](#).

### Task F-11C: Add Voice Ports Back to the Hunt Group

Add the voice ports purchased for the system back into the DEFINITY AUDIX Hunt Group.

To add the voice ports:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change hunt-group number** where *number* is the number of the hunt group for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

The switch displays the Hunt Group screen.

2. Press **(NEXTPAGE)** until the switch displays the Group Member Assignments screen.

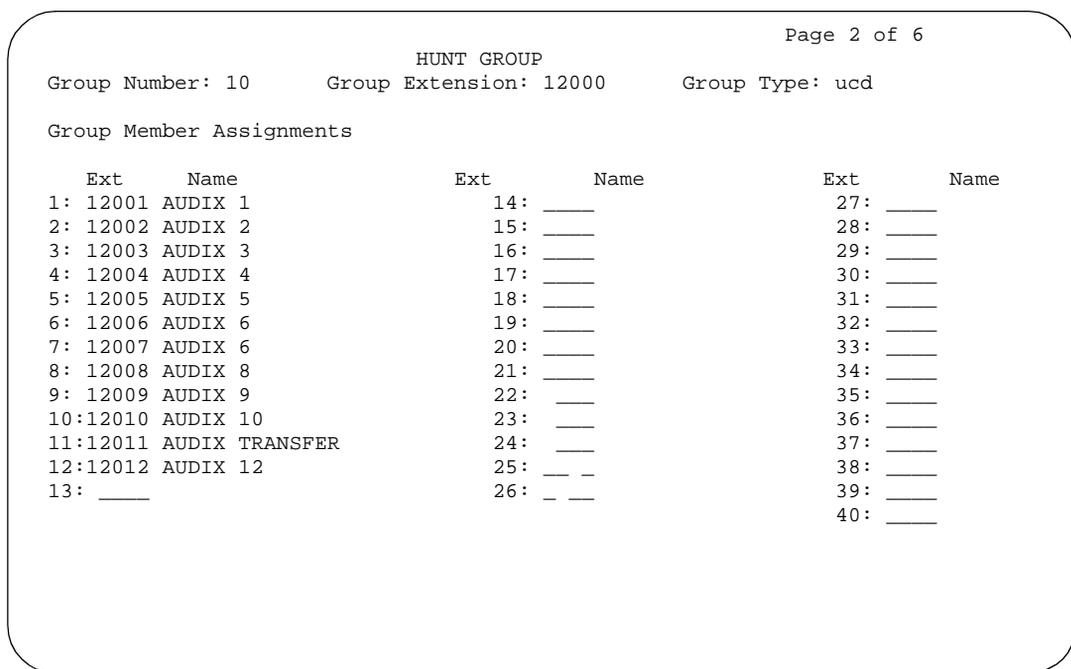


Figure F-16. Example of the Hunt Group Group Member Assignments Screen, (G3i/G3s/G3vs)

3. Type the extensions of the all the voice ports that are part of the new DEFINITY AUDIX system.

**NOTE:**

If you do not know the extensions of the new system, enter **display voice-group** on the DEFINITY AUDIX terminal, and write down the extensions of the voice ports on the screen.

4. Press **(ENTER)** to save the changes to the hunt group.
5. Continue with [Task F-12](#).

## Task F-12: Complete Additional Migration Tasks

---

To complete the migration, you (or the customer) must complete a number of additional installation tasks. These may include:

- Administering additional languages
- Testing alarms
- Administering remote terminals
- Backing up the system
- Testing digital networking
- Testing remote machines

Refer to the DEFINITY AUDIX R4.0 Administration book for instructions to complete these tasks.

# Announcement Set Considerations and Installation



---

This appendix describes customized announcement sets and fragments, and includes procedures for installing additional language sets.

## Customized Announcement and Fragments

---

If the customer added or deleted announcements, contact Tier 3 engineers for technical support. If the customer modified standard announcements, the customer should consider the viability of using them in the upgrade. If the standard announcement set was changed in R4.0, the modified announcements may not make sense in the new context. To check the context, examine the contents of the modified announcement and all fragments called by that announcement. If the customer decides the modified announcement will work in a meaningful way, it can then be copied to the announcement set being used.

## Customer Modified and Added Fragments

---

It is possible the official fragment has changed and the customer's version may not make sense each time and place the official fragment is used. If it can no longer be used effectively, the customer should delete it from the **\*.cust** directory.

If the customer desires to reuse the fragment, they must assign it to an unused number in the 4000-4999 range reserved for customer use. It can then be copied to the desired announcement set.

## Announcement Set Identifiers

---

The following table lists the names assigned to representative announcement sets available to DEFINITY AUDIX users. Note that names of the verbose (standard) sets can be no longer than eight characters in length.

The names of these announcement sets are listed in the first column. These names are also printed on the magneto-optical disk cartridge labels and are listed on the several DEFINITY AUDIX screens such as *Add Announcements* and

*List Announcements.* See the procedure below for installing additional language sets.

The numbers in the second column are the touch-tone equivalents for the R4.0 announcement set names. These codes are used only by the system administrator. Note that the hyphens in the numbers are ignored.

The recorded words in the third column are the language's self-identifying announcement used by the Multilingual feature. These are stored in *Announcement #1143*.

The recorded words in the fourth column are announcement set identifiers used when system administrators edit announcement sets. For all announcement sets, these names are played in *Announcement #855*.

 **NOTE:**

The following table offers a representative list of announcements. The list of available announcements constantly changes. Contact your Lucent representative for an up-to-date list.

Announcement Set Names	Touch-Tone ID	Multilingual Self-ID Announcement	Administration Self-ID Announcement
us-eng (standard)	87364	"English"	"Standard US English" ("Standard American")
us-eng-t (terse)	873648	"English"	"Terse US English" ("Terse American")
us-123 (123stand)	87123	"English"	"123 Standard US English" ("123 Standard American")
british (british)	2748474	"English"	"British-English" ("British-English")
lat-span (lat-span)	5287726	"Español"	"Español" ("Latin-Spanish")
french-c (french-c)	3736242	"Francais"	"Canadien Francais" ("Canadien Francais")
us-tdd	87833	"TDD ENGLISH"	Standard U.S. TDD
dutch	38824	"Nederlands"	"Nederlands"
german	437626	Deutsch	Deutsch
portug	767884	Português	Português

## Installing Additional Language Sets

---

Perform the following procedure to add new language sets while restoring a DEFINITY AUDIX system. Each language set is provided on its own magneto-optical disk cartridge.

1. Inform subscribers through a broadcast message that the DEFINITY AUDIX system will be taken off the line for up to half an hour.
2. Log in to the DEFINITY AUDIX System on the administration terminal as *craft*.
3. Enter **reset system oa&m**

Use the *camp-on* option to allow any callers to complete their messages. The system resets to the Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OA&M) state.

4. Press **F3** (Enter).

The system stops all calls and the cursor returns to the DEFINITY AUDIX login prompt.

5. Login as *craft*.

6. Enter **remove mo-disk**

7. Remove the magneto-optical disk cartridge from the MO-drive and insert the new language disk cartridge.

8. Enter **add mo-disk**

The add operation takes approximately 15 seconds and is done in the background. When the operation is complete, the Status Disk screen will show *In service, idle*.

9. Enter **restore backups**

The system restores the new language set from the magneto-optical disk cartridge.

10. Press **RETURN** to confirm this operation.

11. Enter **remove mo-disk**

12. If more than one language set is being added to the system, repeat [Step 6](#) through [Step 11](#) with each new language disk cartridge.

13. Remove the new language disk cartridge and insert the original backup disk cartridge.

14. Enter **reset system restart**

15. The system reboots and returns to the AUDIX state.

# Terminal and Modem Settings



---

This appendix contains a list of option settings for supported terminals and modems, although in most cases you must refer to the appropriate manual supplied with the terminal and modem for procedures to set these options.

## Terminal Option Settings

This section lists the option settings required for a terminal or PC to work effectively with the DEFINIITY AUDIX system. If the terminal is connected to both the switch and the DEFINIITY AUDIX, it must be administered in the dual port mode so that users can toggle between the two systems.

 **CAUTION:**

*If you connect a terminal or PC to a DEFINIITY AUDIX system installed in a DC-powered switch, you must install an opto-isolator in the circuit. Refer to [Task 2-3A](#) in [Chapter 2](#) for installation instructions.*

Following are a list of important terminal settings. Refer to the appropriate manual supplied with the terminal for specific instructions on setting these options.

Administer the terminal for dual host support if the DEFINITY AUDIX system and the switch use the same terminal.

**Table H-1. Terminal Option Settings**

---

Option	Setting
Lines	24
Columns	80
Reverse video	no
Scrolling	user preference
Scroll speed	user preference
Key click	user preference
Font size	large
Parallel port	enabled (if connecting a parallel printer)

---

**Table H-2. Terminal Communication Option Settings (Dual Host Support)**

Option	Main Setting (Switch)	Aux Setting (AUDIX)
Port mapping	port 1	port 2
Port service	host	host
Speed	9600	9600
Stop bits	1	1
Data bits	7	7
Send parity	space	space
Check parity	no	no
Local Echo	off	off
Encoding	off	off
Generate flow	XON/XOFF	XON/XOFF
Receive flow	XON/XOFF	XON/XOFF <sup>1</sup>
Answerback on connect	no	no
Clear communication port	main	aux

---

1. This option may also be set to none.

**Table H-3. Terminal General Option Settings**

Option	Window 1 (Switch)	Window 2 (AUDIX)
Emulation	BCS	BCS
Newline on CR	no	no
Transmit controls	7 bits	7 bits
Backspace mode	normal	normal

**Table H-4. Terminal Display Option Settings**

Option	Window 1 (Switch)	Window2 (AUDIX)
Monitor mode	off	off
Cursor type	block	block
Cursor blink	on	on
Display cursor	yes	yes
Status line position	bottom	bottom
Status line type	host	host
Character mode	multnatl	multnatl
International font	ISO Latn	ISO Latn
Autowrap	on	on

**Table H-5. Terminal Keyboard Option Settings**

Option	Window 1 (Switch)	Window 2 (AUDIX)
Enter key	<b>(ESC) (S) (B)</b> <sup>1</sup>	ent <sup>2</sup>
Break key	enabled	enabled
Swap delete	yes	yes
Control key swapping	none	none

1. This option is loaded by the DEFINITY switch.
2. This option is loaded by the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

For auxiliary printer options, set the options on the printer as described in the manual supplied with the printer, then set the corresponding options on the terminal to match.

## Modem Option Settings (for Port C Modems)

---

The DEFINITY AUDIX system supports external modems that use the Hayes command set. This includes modems manufactured outside the United States.

This document describes the initialization settings for the following modems:

- US Robotics Sportster 33.6
- [Paradyne Comsphere Models 3810 and 3820](#)
- [Paradyne Comsphere Model 3910](#)
- [Paradyne Comsphere Model 3910](#)
- [7400A Data Module Settings](#)
- [7400B Data Module Settings](#)

If your modem is not listed, see "[Paradyne Comsphere Model 3910](#)" on page 6 for a list of requirements and suggested modem settings.

### CAUTION:

*If you connect a modem to a DEFINITY AUDIX system installed in a DC-powered switch, you must use a ground-isolated modem.*

## US Robotics Sportster 33.6

---

The US Robotics Sportster modems are shipped from the factory with default option settings. Use the following procedure to change the settings when using this modem with the DEFINITY AUDIX System.

1. Connect the modem to a terminal (for example, the 715 BCT) with the terminal speed set at 9600 bps.

### NOTE:

The maximum modulation data rate must be set to 9600 bps when this modem is connected to DEFINITY AUDIX.

2. Enter AT to get the OK prompt
3. Enter the following initialization string:

**AT&F0&W0**

## H Terminal and Modem Settings

### Modem Option Settings (for Port C Modems)

H-6

This string initializes the modem to perform basic tasks with DEFINITY AUDIX. When the DEFINITY AUDIX system boots up, it automatically resets the modem initialization string with the value listed on the System-Parameters Maintenance screen ([Task 10-1](#) in [Chapter 10](#)). The default value for this initialization string was designed to optimize the performance of the US Robotics modem. This value is listed below:

**AT&F0E1X4&A3&B1&K0&N6&U2S0=1S13=1Y0&W0**

4. Enable Auto Answer by turning the dip switch 5 setting to off.

The dip switches are located on the back of the modem. See the user's manual for instructions to change the dip switch setting.

## Paradyne Comsphere Models 3810 and 3820

The Paradyne Comsphere modem is shipped from the factory with default option settings. Use the following procedure to change the settings when using this modem with the DEFINITY AUDIX System.

1. Connect the modem to a terminal (for example, the 715 BCT) with the terminal speed set at 9600 bps.



### NOTE:

The maximum modulation data rate must be set to 9600 bps when this modem is connected to DEFINITY AUDIX.

2. Enter AT to get the OK prompt.
3. Enter the following string:

**AT&F0&W0**

This string initializes the modem to perform basic tasks with DEFINITY AUDIX. When the DEFINITY AUDIX system boots up, it automatically resets the remote modem initialization string with the value listed on the System-Parameters Maintenance screen.

4. Follow [Task 10-1](#) in [Chapter 10](#) to access the System-Parameters Maintenance screen.
5. Enter the following value on this screen:

**AT&F0E1B0X6Y0&D2&T5\K1\Q0%C0"H0S41=3S49=0S55=1&W0**

6. Enable Auto Answer.

See the Paradyne user's manual for instructions to enable Auto Answer.

## Paradyne Comsphere Model 3910

The Paradyne Comsphere modem is shipped from the factory with default option settings. Use the following procedure to change the settings when using this modem with the DEFINITY AUDIX System.

H Terminal and Modem Settings

Modem Option Settings (for Port C Modems)

H-7

1. Connect the modem to a terminal (for example, the 715 BCT) with the terminal speed set at 9600 bps.



**NOTE:**

The maximum modulation data rate must be set to 9600 bps when this modem is connected to DEFINITY AUDIX.

2. Enter **AT** to get the OK prompt.
3. Enter the following string:

**AT&F0&W0**

This string initializes the modem to perform basic tasks with DEFINITY AUDIX. When the DEFINITY AUDIX system boots up, it automatically resets the remote modem initialization string with the value listed on the System-Parameters Maintenance screen.

4. Refer to [Task 10-1](#) in [Chapter 10](#), and access the System-Parameters Maintenance screen.
5. Enter the following value on this screen:

**AT&F0E1X6Y0&D2&T5\K1\Q0%C0"H0S41=3S49=0S55=1&W0**

6. Enable Auto Answer.

See the Paradyne user's manual for instructions to enable Auto Answer.

## Generic Modems

---

DEFINITY AUDIX requires a modem (domestic or international) that supports the features listed in [Table H-6](#). Use the table to create an initialization string for your modem that includes these features.

**Table H-6. Modem Features Required to Interface with DEFINITY AUDIX**

Feature	Sportster Option
Hayes command set	
modem echoes keyboard commands	E1
Enable result code display	Q0
Display verbal result codes	V1

**Table H-6. Modem Features Required to Interface with DEFINITY AUDIX**

Feature	Sportster Option
At a minimum, modem must display the following result codes:  OK, CONNECT, RING, NO CARRIER, ERROR, CONNECTxxxx (where xxxx is the modem speed), NO DIALTONE, BUSY, NO ANSWER	X4
Reset the modem to the initialization string stored in NVRAM (non-volatile memory)	Y0
Enable fixed serial port rate	&B1
Normal CD operations	&C1
Normal DTR operations	&D2
Ability to set Guard Tones	&G0
Disable transmit hardware and software flow controls	&H0
Disable receive software flow control	&I0
Disable data compression	&K0
Enable error control	&M4
Set top connect speed to 9600bps	&N6
Hardware flow control: ignore RTS	&R1
Override DSR, always on	&S0
Set bottom connect speed to 1200 bps	&U2
Stores the initialization string in NVRAM	&W0
Set break handling to destructive, expedited	&Y1
Enable auto answer after one ring	S0=1
Reset the modem when DTR drops	S13=1



**CAUTION:**

*If the DEFINITY AUDIX system is installed in a DC-powered switch, you must use a ground-isolated modem.*

The following screen shows the optimized modem setting for a US Robotics Sportster 33.6 integrated with DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0.

```
OK
ati4

USRobotics Sportster 33600 Fax Settings...

B0 E1 F1 M1 Q0 V1 X4 Y0
BAUD=9600 PARITY=N WORDLEN=8
DIAL=HUNT ON HOOK

&A3 &B1 &C1 &D2 &G0 &H0 &I0 &K0 &M4 &N6
&P0 &R1 &S0 &T5 &U2 &Y1

S00=001 S01=000 S02=043 S03=013 S04=010 S05=008 S06=002
S07=060 S08=002 S09=006 S10=014 S11=070 S12=050 S13=001
S15=000 S16=000 S18=000 S19=000 S21=010 S22=017 S23=019
S25=005 S27=000 S28=008 S29=020 S30=000 S31=128 S32=002
S33=000 S34=000 S36=014 S38=000 S39=000 S41=000
```

**Figure H-1. Optimized Modem Settings for a US Robotics Sportster 33.6**

If you need more detailed information to optimize your modem for DEFINITY AUDIX, go to the following web site:

<http://www.usr.com/home/online/>

Navigate to the Sportster technical manual and look up the option settings located in the Technical Quick Reference section at the back of the manual. Use the manual to determine the function of the options listed in [Figure H-1](#) and create equivalent settings for your own modem.

## 7400A Data Module Settings

---

In the *set interface* option menu, set the ANS ONLY? option to YES. Then select the following options:

Option	Setting
BAUD RATE	1200 and 9600
ANS	AUTO
BRK DISK	LONG
CI	OFF
CH	OFF
CTS	ON
DCD	NORMAL
DSR	ON
DTR	50 Msec
DTR	FOLLOW
LL	OFF
REMLOOP	GRANT
RI	ON
RL	OFF
SIGLS DISC	OFF
TM	OFF
DONE	YES

See *7400A Data Module User's Manual*, 555-020-706, for instructions on how to set options on the 7400A data module.

## 7400B Data Module Settings

---

Set the two dip switches located under the top panel of the 7400B data module as follows:

- SW1-1:
  - Set to ON if a telephone is *not* attached to the 7400B.
  - Set to OFF if a telephone *is* attached to the 7400B.
- SW1-5: ON

See *7400B Plus Data Module User's Guide*, 555-020-710, for instructions on how to set options on the 7400B data module.

# Changing Switch Integrations, Port Emulations, and Number of Voice Ports



---

This appendix describes the tasks needed to change various aspects of the switch administration of the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

## Changing from Analog to Digital Port Emulation

---

This section describes the tasks needed to change the switch administration of the DEFINITY AUDIX system to digital port emulation from analog port emulation. You must perform this task to allow your system to use the digital networking feature.

### Verifying the Emulation and Integration Types

---

Before you administer the switch to support CL integration with digital ports, the remote service center should change the emulation defined within the DEFINITY AUDIX system. Do the following to be sure the integration has been changed.

1. At the DEFINITY AUDIX administration terminal, log into the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
2. On the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **display system-parameters customer-options**  
The system displays the System Parameters Customer Options screen.
3. Check the `Port Emulation Type` field for one of the following values:
  - **tn2181** (12-port system)
  - **tn754** (8-port system)
4. If one of these values is not present, call the remote service center immediately to arrange to change the value.



**NOTE:**

Reboot the DEFINITY AUDIX machine after the emulation designation has been changed and before you do the next task.

## Verifying the DEFINITY AUDIX TN568 Circuit Pack

---

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **list configuration board slot** where *slot* is the location of the TN568 circuit pack in the switch carrier. If you do not know the slot location of the DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack, enter **list configuration** to display a list of the circuit packs for the switch.
2. Verify that the DEFINITY AUDIX TN 568 circuit pack is recognized as a TN754B circuit pack (System 75/G1/G3V1), a TN2181 circuit pack (G3V2 through R6), or a TN568 circuit pack (R7 or greater).

If the circuit pack is not recognized correctly, enter **change circuit-packs cabinet** to display the circuit pack screen. Conflict markers (# sign) most likely will display to the right of the Code field on the circuit pack screen for the two slots occupied by the DEFINITY AUDIX system. Refer to [Task 4-1](#) in [Chapter 4](#) for instructions on changing the DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack designation.

## Administering the Voice Ports

---

See [Task 4-6](#) in [Chapter 4](#) for instructions on administering digital ports.

## Changing the Hunt Group

---

See [Task 4-7](#) in [Chapter 4](#) for instructions on assigning the hunt group for the DEFINITY AUDIX system. You will change the hunt group instead of adding the hunt group.

1. Enter **change hunt-group number**
2. For G3r/R5r, make changes to page 2 of the Hunt Group screen as described in [Task 4-7](#) in [Chapter 4](#). In most cases, you will change the Message Center name from **audix** to **none** and, for G3r/R5r or greater, to delete any entry in the Message Center AUDIX Name field.

## Adding the Voice Port Coverage Path

---

Add the voice port coverage path for digital port emulation. Refer to “Defining the Call Coverage Path for Voice Ports” in [Chapter 4](#) for instructions on adding the coverage path.

## Changing from CL Integration — Analog to DS Integration — Digital

This section describes the tasks needed to change the switch administration of the DEFINITY AUDIX system to DS integration from CL integration.

### Verifying the Emulation and Integration Types

Before changing the switch from supporting CL integration to supporting DS integration begins, the remote service center must change the integration defined within the DEFINITY AUDIX system. Do the following to be sure the integration has been changed.

1. At the DEFINITY AUDIX administration terminal, log into the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
2. On the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **display system-parameters customer-options**

The system displays the System Parameters Customer Options screen.

3. Check the `Port Emulation Type` field for one of the following values:
  - **tn2181** (12-port system)
  - **tn754** (8-port system)
4. Check the `Switch Integration Type` field for **display-set**
5. If these values are not present in one or both of the fields, call the remote service center immediately to arrange to change the values.

#### NOTE:

Reboot the DEFINITY AUDIX system after the integration (and emulation) designations have been changed and before you do [Removing Voice Ports](#).

## Removing Voice Ports

Before changing from one configuration to another, you need to first remove existing voice ports on the switch.

## Verifying the Port IDs of the Voice Ports

Verify the port identifications and port type of the voice ports.

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **list station extension count *n*** where *extension* is the first extension in the hunt group and *n* is the number of voice ports.

The List Station screen appears.

### NOTE:

This command works only if the voice port extensions are in sequence (for example, 55555, 55556, 55557, and so on). If you created extensions that are not sequential, use the **list station extension** command.

```
list station 12001 count 16
```

Page 1

#### STATIONS

Ext.	Port	Type	Name	Room	Data Ext.	Cov. Path	COR	COS	Cable Jack
12001	A0501	2500	AUDIX 1				1	1	
12002	A0502	2500	AUDIX 2				1	1	
12003	A0503	2500	AUDIX 3				1	1	
12004	A0504	2500	AUDIX 4				1	1	
12005	A0505	2500	AUDIX 5				1	1	
12006	A0506	2500	AUDIX 6				1	1	
12007	A0507	2500	AUDIX 7				1	1	
12008	A0508	2500	AUDIX 8				1	1	
12009	A0509	2500	AUDIX 9				1	1	
12010	A0510	2500	AUDIX 10				1	1	
12011	A0511	2500	AUDIX 11				1	1	
12012	A0512	2500	AUDIX 12				1	1	

Figure I-1. Voice Port Stations

2. Record the extension and port numbers for each port. Note also if the ports are digital or analog. The following port types are all analog:
  - **2500** (System 75, G1, G3V1, and G3i-Global)
  - **ADXCL** (G3V2/V3/V4/R5/R6)
  - **ADX16A** (R7 or greater)
3. Determine your next step:
  - If the ports are analog, continue with [“Removing Existing Voice Ports”](#).
  - If the ports are digital, continue with [“Verifying the Circuit Pack”](#) on [page I-6](#).

## Removing Existing Voice Ports

Use the following procedure to remove the voice ports from both the hunt group and from the switch.

1. Enter **list hunt-group** to locate the DEFINITY AUDIX system hunt group.

The figure below shows the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group listed for a switch identified by the Group Name AUDIX.

```
list hunt-group Page 1
```

HUNT GROUP										
Grp No.	Grp Ext.	Type	Group Name	ACD	MIS	Queue Length	No. of Members	Covg. Path	Message Center	
10	12000	ucd	AUDIX	n	n	12	12			

Figure I-2. Example of a Voice Port Hunt Group screen

2. Enter **change hunt-group number** where *number* is the hunt group number.
3. Press **(NEXTPAGE)** twice to display the Hunt Group screen — Group Member Assignments.

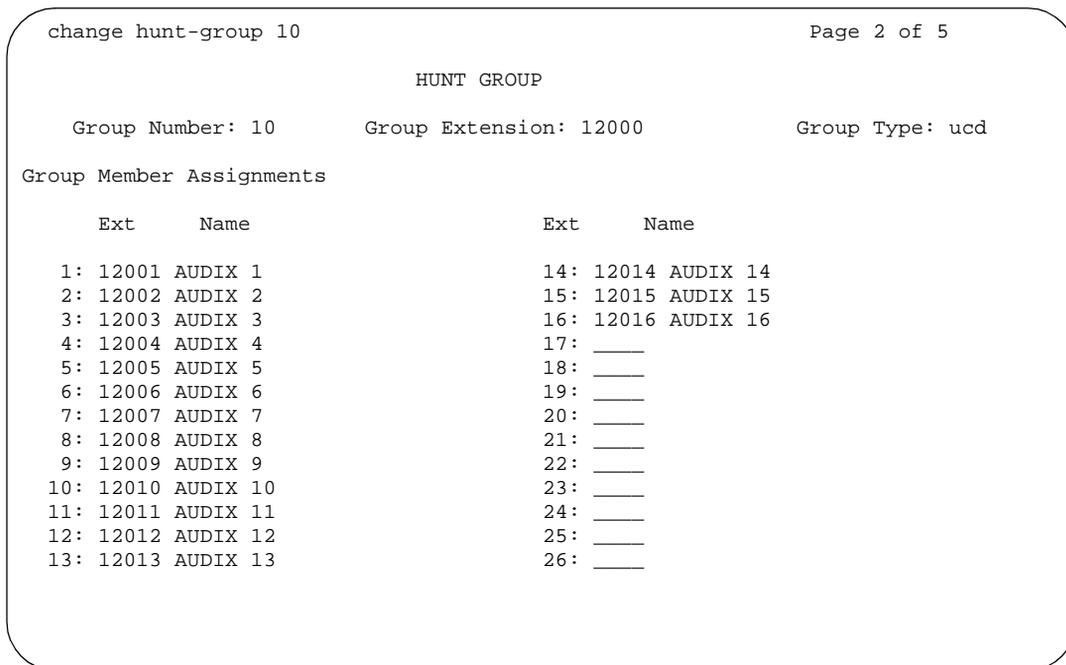


Figure I-3. Example of a Hunt Group Screen — Group Member Assignments

4. Move the cursor to the **Ext** field for each voice port you need to remove. Press **(CLR-FLD)** to remove data from the field.
5. Press **(ENTER)**.
6. Enter **remove station extension** for each voice port you need to remove.

## Verifying the Circuit Pack

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **list configuration board slot** where *slot* is the port location of the DEFINITY AUDIX MFB. If you do not know the slot location of the DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack, enter **list configuration** to display a list of the circuit packs for the switch.
2. Verify that the circuit pack is recognized as a TN754B circuit pack (System 75/G1/G3V1) a TN568 circuit pack (R7 or greater) or a TN2181 circuit pack (R6 or less with 12 ports).

The following figure shows an example of the List Configuration screen, in this case, for a TN2181, 12-port digital emulation.

```
list configuration all                                     Page 2 of 5
                SYSTEM CONFIGURATION
Board
Number   Board Type           Code      Vintage   Assigned Ports
                u=unassigned t=tti
01A01    ANALOG LINE                TN746B   000002   u 02 03 04 05 06 07 08
                09 10 11 u u u u u
01A02    DIGITAL LINE               TN754    000012   01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08
01A03    ANALOG LINE                TN742    000017   u 02 03 04 05 06 07 08
01A04    DATA LINE                 TN726B   000003   01 u u u u u u u
01A05                                no board u u u u u u u
01A06                                no board u u u u u u u
01A07    RESERVED AUDIX            tn2181   audix    u u u u u u u
01A08    DIGITAL LINE               TN2181   000055   01 02 03 04 05 06 07 08
                09 10 11 12
01A09                                no board u u u u
01A10    TONE DETECTOR             TN748D   000001   01 02 03      05 06 07
```

Figure I-4. Example List Configuration Screen — TN2181 Digital Port Emulation

## Administering the Voice Ports

Follow the instructions in [Task 4-6](#) in [Chapter 4](#) for instructions on adding voice ports with digital port emulation. DS integration requires digital port emulation.

## Changing the Hunt Group

Refer to [Task 4-7](#) for instructions on assigning the hunt group for the DEFINITY AUDIX system. You will change the hunt group instead of adding the hunt group.

1. Enter **change hunt-group number**
2. For G3r/R5r or greater, make changes to page 2 of the Hunt Group screen. In most cases, you will change the Message Center name from **audix** to **none** and, for G3r/R5r or greater, to delete any entry in the Message Center AUDIX Name field.

## Adding the Voice Port Coverage Path

Add the voice port coverage path for digital port emulation. Refer to “Defining the Call Coverage Path for Voice Ports” in [Chapter 4](#) for instructions on adding the coverage path.

## Changing Subscriber Stations

1. Enter **change station extension** for each subscriber station.
2. Change the LWC Reception field to the following:
  - **spe** for G3r/R5r
3. Change the LWC Activation field to **n**
4. Set Coverage Msg Retrieval? to **y**

Refer to [Task 9-1](#) in [Chapter 9](#) for further instructions on administering the subscribers.

## Disabling the Data Link

Disable the data link for the CL integration. The DS integration of the DEFINITY AUDIX system does not use a data link.

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change communication-interface links**  
  
The switch displays the Interface Links screen.
2. Change the Enable field to **n** for the DEFINITY AUDIX system link.

## Changing from DS Integration — Digital to CL Integration — Digital

---

This section describes the tasks needed to change the switch administration of the DEFINITY AUDIX system to CL integration from DS integration.

### NOTE:

To perform this procedure, you must refer to two versions of the DEFINITY AUDIX installation book for your switch: the control-link version and the display set version.

### Turning Off Message Waiting Indicators

You must turn off the message waiting indicators (MWIs) on subscribers' telephones before changing a system to CL integration. Otherwise, the indicators will be on indefinitely, whether or not subscribers have new messages.

To turn off the MWIs, do the following:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change station extension** for the first voice port in the DEFINITY AUDIX hunt group.  
  
The switch displays the Station screen.
2. Press **(NEXTPAGE)** until the Feature Button Assignments page of the Station screen appears.
3. For feature button 1, replace **lwc-store** with **lwc-cancel**
4. For feature button 2, delete **lwc-cancel**
5. Press **(ENTER)** to save the changes.
6. Repeat Steps 1 through 5 for each voice port.

As the switch performs audits on the voice ports, it turns off subscriber message waiting indicators. The switch requires approximately 15 seconds per subscriber to turn off the MWI. Therefore, you may have to wait up to several hours for all indicators to be turned off.

### NOTE:

You do not have to wait until the MWI for each subscriber is turned off before proceeding with the remaining steps.

7. Log into the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
8. On the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **display administration-log**  
  
The switch displays Page 1 of the Administration Log.

9. Enter the current date in the `Start Date` field and the current time in the `Time` field. Leave the `Type` field blank.

The switch displays Page 2 of the Administration Log. The following log message appears for each subscriber with new messages in his or her mailbox:

AUDIX subscriber (ext. XXXXX) may have LWC disabled.

10. Note a specific subscriber for which the preceding message occurs. Then wait for the message to appear a second time for the same subscriber. This means that the subscriber's MWI is turned off.

## Verifying the Emulation and Integration Types

---

Before the change from DS integration to CL integration begins, the remote service center must change the integration defined for the DEFINITY AUDIX system. Do the following to be sure the integration has been changed.

1. Log into the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
2. On the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **display system-parameters customer-options**  
The System Parameters Customer Options screen appears.
3. Check the `Port Emulation Type` field for the value **tn754** or **tn2181**
4. Check the `Switch Integration Type` field for **dcIU-sci**
5. If these values are not present in one or both of the fields, call the remote service center immediately to arrange to change the values.

### NOTE:

Reboot the DEFINITY AUDIX system after the integration (and emulation) designations have been changed and before you do [Verifying the Circuit Pack](#).

## Verifying the Circuit Pack

---

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **list configuration board slot** where *slot* is the port location of the DEFINITY AUDIX TN568 circuit pack. If you do not know the slot location of the DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack, enter **list configuration** to display the circuit packs for the switch. Look for a TN754 or TN2181 code.
2. Verify that the circuit pack is recognized as a TN754, TN2181 or TN568 circuit pack.

If the circuit pack is not recognized correctly, enter **change circuit-packs cabinet** to display the circuit pack form. Conflict markers (# sign) most likely will display to the right of the Code field on the circuit pack form for the two slots occupied by the DEFINITY AUDIX system. Refer to [Task 4-1](#) in [Chapter 4](#) for instructions on changing the DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack designation.

## Assigning User Defined Adjunct Names (G3r Only)

---

Complete [Task 4-2](#) in [Chapter 4](#) if this name has not been assigned previously for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

## Re-administering the Voice Ports

---

Reset Page 3 of the Station screen for the voice ports to show the following feature buttons:

- 1: **lwc-store**
- 2: **lwc-cancel**
- 3: **aux-work Grp: XX**

For more information on voice port administration, see the instructions on adding digital voice ports in [Task 4-6](#) in [Chapter 4](#).

## Changing the Hunt Group

---

Refer to [Task 4-7](#) in [Chapter 4](#) for instructions on assigning the hunt group for the DEFINITY AUDIX system. You will change the hunt group instead of adding the hunt group.

1. Enter **change hunt-group number**
2. Make changes to page 1 of the Hunt Group screen (also page 2 for G3r/R5r). In most cases, you will change the Message Center name from **none** to **audix** and, for G3r/R5r, you will also enter, in the Message Center AUDIX Name field, the name entered in [Task 4-2](#).

## Assigning the Data Link

---

Refer to [Chapter 4](#) for instructions on assigning the data link for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

## Changing Subscriber Stations

---

1. Enter **change station extension** for each subscriber station.
2. Change the `LWC Reception` field to **audix** for each subscriber station if the subscriber is storing Leave Word Calling messages on the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
3. Set `LWC Activation?` to **y** if the subscriber is assigned the Leave Word Calling feature.
4. Set `Redirect Notification` to **y**
5. Set `Message Waiting Indication` to **led** or **neon** if the voice terminal has an MWI lamp. This step applies to 500, 2500, and 7104A voice terminals only.
6. Under `BUTTON ASSIGNMENTS`, enter the following button assignments to interact with DEFINITY AUDIX system features:
  - **call-fwd**
  - **goto-cover**
  - **lwc-store**
  - **send-calls**
7. Press `(ENTER)`.

Refer to [Task 9-1](#) in [Chapter 9](#) for further instructions on administering the subscribers.

## Checking the Switch Link

---

The switch link is the interface link assigned in [Chapter 4](#).

1. Enter **busy link switch link number** to busy out the switch link.
2. Enter **test link switch link number** to test the switch link.
3. Enter **release link switch link number** to release the switch link.
4. Enter **status link switch link number** to check the status of the switch link.

`in-service` is displayed if the link is in service.

## Decreasing the Number of Digital Voice Ports from 12 to 8

---

To add a digital networking port to a system that already uses digital port emulation, you may need to decrease the total number of ports. On a switch to which you are adding a networking port, the number of voice ports may be no greater than 8.

To decrease the number of digital voice ports, do the following tasks:

- Change the Voice Group screen on the DEFINITY AUDIX system
- Verify DEFINITY AUDIX Customer Options
- Add Networking Ports
- Remove Ports from the Hunt Group

### Changing the Voice Group Screen on the DEFINITY AUDIX System

---

To remove the voice ports on the DEFINITY AUDIX system, change the Voice Group screen.

To change the Voice Group screen:

1. On the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **change voice-group**  
The Voice Group screen appears.
2. Delete voice ports 9 and above.

### Verifying DEFINITY AUDIX Customer Options

---

To verify the DEFINITY AUDIX customer options:

1. Log into the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
2. On the DEFINITY AUDIX command line, enter **display system-parameters customer-options**  
The system displays the System Parameters Customer Options screen.
3. Check the `Maximum Number of Voice Ports` field for the new number of ports.
4. Check the `Maximum Number of Digital Networking Ports` field for the number of ports (one).
5. If these values are not correct in one or both of the fields, call the remote service center immediately to change the values.

## Add a Networking Port

To add a networking port, you must administer the ports on the host switch. For information on administering the switch for digital networking, see *DEFINITY AUDIX System Digital Networking* (585-300-534).

## Removing Ports from the Hunt Group

On the switch, remove any ports in the hunt group not intended for use by the DEFINITY AUDIX system. This task is necessary because the DEFINITY AUDIX system answers calls only on ports purchased for the system. If you assign more than the number of ports purchased, some calls to the DEFINITY AUDIX system are not answered.

To remove the additional voice ports to a hunt group, use the following procedure:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change hunt-group number** where number is the number of the Hunt Group assigned to the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

The switch displays the Hunt Group screen.

```
change hunt-group 10                                     Page 1 of 6
                                     HUNT GROUP
Group Number: 10      Group Extension: 12000      Group Type: ucd
Group Name: AUDIX    Coverage Path: _____  COR? 1
Security Code: _____ Message Center: none    ACD? n
Queue? y Night Service Destination: _____  Vector? n

ISDN Caller Disp: _____

Queue Length: 8
Calls Warning Threshold: _____ Calls Warning Port: _____
Time Warning Threshold: _____ Time Warning Port: _____
First Announcement Extension: _____ First Announcement Delay (sec): _____
```

Figure I-5. Example of a Hunt Group Screen — Page 1 (G3i/G3s/G3vs)

2. Press **(NEXTPAGE)** until the switch displays the Group Member Assignments screen.

Page 2 of 6

HUNT GROUP

Group Number: 10      Group Extension: 12000      Group Type: ucd

Group Member Assignments

Ext	Name	Ext	Name	Ext	Name
1: 12001	AUDIX 1	14: _____		27: _____	
2: 12002	AUDIX 2	15: _____		28: _____	
3: 12003	AUDIX 3	16: _____		29: _____	
4: 12004	AUDIX 4	17: _____		30: _____	
5: 12005	AUDIX 5	18: _____		31: _____	
6: 12006	AUDIX 6	19: _____		32: _____	
7: 12007	AUDIX 6	20: _____		33: _____	
8: 12008	AUDIX 8	21: _____		34: _____	
9: 12009	AUDIX 9	22: _____		35: _____	
10: 12010	AUDIX 10	23: _____		36: _____	
11: 12011	AUDIX TRANSFER	24: _____		37: _____	
12: 12012	AUDIX 12	25: _____		38: _____	
13: _____		26: _____		39: _____	
				40: _____	

**Figure I-6. Example of a Hunt Group Screen — Page 2, Group Member Assignments (G3i/G3s/G3vs)**

3. Remove the extensions of ports you just removed from the DEFINITY AUDIX system.
4. Press **(ENTER)** to save the changes to the hunt group.

## Removing Voice Ports

---

On the switch, you should delete any ports you removed from the Hunt Group

To delete the voice ports:

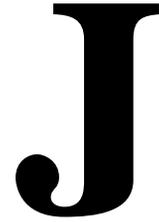
1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **remove station *number*** where *number* is the extension of the voice port you want to delete.  
The switch displays the station screen for this phone.
2. Review the station screen to ensure it corresponds to the voice port you want to remove.
3. If this is the correct voice port, press .

The switch displays the following message:

```
command successfully completed.
```

4. Repeat [Step 1](#) through [Step 3](#) to delete other voice ports you removed from the Hunt Group.

## Analog Port Administration



---

This appendix describes the tasks needed to administer analog port emulation. Analog port emulation was used in DEFINITY AUDIX releases 2.0, 3.0, and 3.1 when control link integration was desired. With DEFINITY AUDIX 4.0, digital port emulation can be used with both display set integration and control link integration. These procedures are included here for those customers who may have upgraded to release 4.0, but did not change from analog port emulation to digital port emulation.

## G3r/R5r

This section includes the procedures for administering analog port emulation with G3r/R5r or greater switches.

### Task J-1: Identifying the Circuit Pack — Analog Emulation

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **change circuit-packs cabinet** to administer the DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack on the switch; or, enter **display circuit-packs cabinet** to ensure that the switch has recognized the installed circuit pack.

The switch displays the Circuit Pack screen.

```
change circuit-packs 2                                Page 4 of 5
                CIRCUIT PACKS
Cabinet: 2                      Carrier: D
Cabinet Layout: five-carrier    Carrier Type: port

Slot Code Sfx Name                               Slot Code Sfx Name
00: TN771 C  MAINTENANCE/TEST                    11: TN726 B  DATA LINE
01: TN768 _  TONE/CLOCK                          12: TN747 B  CO TRUNK
02: TN570 _  EXPANSION INTF                     13: TN464 C  UDS1 INTERFACE
03: TN748 C  TONE DETECTOR                      14: TN754 B  DIGITAL LINE
04: TN754 B  DIGITAL LINE                       15: TN754 B  DIGITAL LINE
05: TN754 B  DIGITAL LINE                       16:
06: TN754 B  DIGITAL LINE                       17:
07: TN754 B  DIGITAL LINE                       18: ADXCL    RESERVED-CL
08: TN754 B  DIGITAL LINE                       19: TN568    AUDIX BOARD
09: TN754 B  DIGITAL LINE                       20:
10: TN762 B  HYBRID LINE                         21: _____
```

'#' indicates circuit pack conflict.

Figure J-1. Example of a Circuit Pack Screen (G3rV2/G3rV3) — Analog Emulation



**NOTE:**

For G3R7, slot 1 on the DEFINITY AUDIX system will show ADX12A  
 RESERVED-AUDIX-12A.

2. Use the entries in the table below to administer the DEFINITY AUDIX TN568 circuit pack.

**Table J-1. Circuit Pack Screen Entries — G3r/R5r or greater**

Field	Description
Slot	The port slot in which the DEFINITY AUDIX TN568 circuit pack resides. This is slot 2 of the two slots occupied by the DEFINITY AUDIX system. There are restrictions on how far to the left the DEFINITY AUDIX system can be placed in the carrier. See <a href="#">Appendix A</a> for these restrictions.
Code	Enter the circuit pack identification code in slot 2. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>TN746</b> (for G3V2-V4/R5/R6)</li> <li>• <b>TN568</b> for R7 or greater switches</li> </ul> The switch populates the remaining information, if any, for slot 1.
Sfx	Leave this field blank.
Name	AUDIX BOARD appears in slot 2 for G3V2/G3V3. MFB appears in slot 2 for G3V4/R5.  In the other slot, RESERVED-CL (G3V2/G3V3) or RESERVED-AUDIX-16A (G3V4/R5) appears.

3. Press **(ENTER)** to save changes.

## **Task J-2: Assigning the User Defined Adjunct Names**

Refer to [Task 4-2](#) in [Chapter 4](#) to complete this section.

## **Task J-3: Administering the Voice Ports as Stations**

In the following procedure, you will administer each of the DEFINITY AUDIX system voice ports.

Refer to [Appendix B](#) to complete this section. The worksheets should have been completed with the customer during the planning phase for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

Use the following procedure to administer the voice ports:

1. Administer voice port 1.

2. Duplicate voice port 1 for the remainder of voice ports.
3. Change the Port and Name fields for each of the duplicated ports.

### Task J-3A: Completing the Station Screen

The first step is to administer the DEFINITY AUDIX voice ports. Refer to Worksheet B-5 for the information required to complete the screens.

Complete the following steps:

1. At the switch administration terminal, enter **add station extension** to add a voice port. The extension number must be the same length as the DEFINITY AUDIX subscriber extension numbers.

The switch displays the Station screen.

```

add station 12001                                     Page 1 of 1
                                                    STATION

Extension: 12001          BCC: 0
  Type: ADXCL             Lock Messages: n          COR: 1
  Port: 01A0501          Security Code: _____ COS: 1
  Name: AUDIX 1          Coverage Path:           Tests? n

FEATURE OPTIONS
  LWC Reception? audix          Coverage Msg Retrieval? n
  LWC Activation? n             Auto Answer? n
  CDR Privacy? n                Data Restriction? n
Redirect Notification? n        Call Waiting Indication? n
Off Premise Station? n        Att. Call Waiting Indication? n
  R Balance Network? n         Distinctive Audible Alert? n
  Switchhook Flash? y         Message Waiting Indicator: _

          AUDIX Name: AUDIXCL
Message Server Name: _____ Audible Message Waiting? n
    
```

Figure J-2. Example of a Station Screen (G3rV2)

2. Use the entries in the table below to complete the Station screen.

**Table J-2. Station Screen Entries (G3r/R5r)**

Field	Entry
Extension	A valid extension number of 3 to 5 digits that agrees with the dial plan. Each voice port needs a unique extension number. Obtain the extension from Worksheet B-5.
BCC	Bearer Capability Class is a display-only field set to <b>0</b> (default) for stations. <b>0</b> indicates voice or voice-grade data. this field is only displayed when the ISDN-PRI option is enabled on the switch System-Parameters Customer-Options screen.
Type	<b>ADXCL</b> for G3rV2-V4/R5/R6 <b>ADX16A</b> for G3rR7
Lock Messages	<b>n</b>
COR	A Class of Restriction for the voice port that reflects the desired restriction. The COR should provide security for the voice ports. Obtain the COR from Worksheet B-5.
Port	The analog port equipment location of the DEFINITY AUDIX TN568 circuit pack on the switch. Enter 7 characters (for example, 01A0501). Obtain the port number from Worksheet B-5. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <span style="display: inline-block; width: 1em;">n</span> The first two characters identify the cabinet (<b>01</b> to <b>22</b>; default is 1).                 </li> <li> <span style="display: inline-block; width: 1em;">n</span> The next character identifies the carrier (<b>A, B, C, D, or E</b>).                 </li> <li> <span style="display: inline-block; width: 1em;">n</span> The next two characters identify the slot number in the carrier (<b>01</b> to <b>18</b> for a single-carrier cabinet and <b>01</b> to <b>20</b> for multi-carrier cabinets). Enter the number of the second slot of the two slots that the DEFINITY AUDIX system occupies. The second slot is occupied by the TN568 circuit pack.                 </li> <li> <span style="display: inline-block; width: 1em;">n</span> The last two characters identify the circuit number. Valid entries are <b>01</b> to <b>12</b>. Assign the first voice port to circuit 01, the second to circuit 02, etc.                 </li> </ul>
Security Code	Leave this field blank.
COS	A Class of Service (COS) that allows access only to the features Call Forwarding All Calls and Data Privacy (indicated by <b>y</b> ). All other features for the COS should be set to <b>n</b> . Obtain this from Worksheet B-5.
Name	<b>AUDIX x</b> where x equals the circuit number of the port, or enter any other name. Obtain the name from Worksheet B-5.
Coverage Path	Leave this field blank.

*Continued on next page*

Table J-2. Station Screen Entries (G3r/R5r) — *Continued*

Field	Entry
Tests?	<b>n</b>
LWC Reception?	<b>none</b>
LWC Activation?	<b>n</b>
CDR Privacy?	<b>n</b>
Redirect Notification?	<b>n</b>
Bridged Call Alerting (G3rV4 only)	<b>n</b>
Off Premise Station?	<b>n</b>
R Balance Network (G3rV1-V3 only)?	<b>n</b>
Switchhook Flash?	<b>y</b>
AUDIX Name	Name of the DEFINITY AUDIX system as it appears on the switch User-Defined Adjunct Names screen defined in <a href="#">Task 4-2</a> in <a href="#">Chapter 4</a> .
Message Server Name	Leave this field blank.
Coverage Message Retrieval?	<b>n</b>
Auto Answer?	<b>n</b>
Data Restriction?	<b>n</b>
Call Waiting Indication?	<b>n</b>
Att. Call Waiting Indication?	<b>n</b>
Distinctive Audible Alert?	<b>n</b>
Message Waiting Indicator	Leave this field blank.
Audible Message Waiting?	<b>n</b>

3. Press **ENTER** to save the station.
4. Continue with [Task J-3B](#).

### Task J-3B: Duplicating the Station

1. Use the duplicate function of your administration tool to duplicate the first voice port created in [Task J-3A](#).

At the switch administration terminal, enter **duplicate station extension** where *extension* is the extension of the first voice port.

2. Change the `Port` and `Name` field for each voice port purchased.
3. Press **ENTER** to save the new extensions.
4. To verify that the voice ports exist on the switch, enter the following command:

```
list station xxxxx count y
```

where *XXXXX* is the number of the first extension, and *y* is the number of voice ports you created.

For example, list station 55555 count 8.

#### NOTE:

This command works only if the voice port extensions are in sequence (for example, 55555, 55556, 55557, and so on). If you created extensions that are not sequential,, use the **list station extension** command.

### Task J-4: Assigning the Hunt Group

1. See [Task 4-7](#) in [Chapter 4](#) for the information to complete this section.

#### NOTE:

Enter only the ports purchased for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

Page 2 of 6

HUNT GROUP

Group Number: 10      Group Extension: 12000      Group Type: ucd

Group Member Assignments

Ext	Name	Ext	Name	Ext	Name
1: 12001	AUDIX 1	14: _____		27: _____	
2: 12002	AUDIX 2	15: _____		28: _____	
3: 12003	AUDIX 3	16: _____		29: _____	
4: 12004	AUDIX 4	17: _____		30: _____	
5: 12005	AUDIX 5	18: _____		31: _____	
6: 12006	AUDIX 6	19: _____		32: _____	
7: 12007	AUDIX 7	20: _____		33: _____	
8: 12008	AUDIX 8	21: _____		34: _____	
9: _____		22: _____		35: _____	
10: _____		23: _____		36: _____	
11: _____		24: _____		37: _____	
12: _____		25: _____		38: _____	
13: _____		26: _____		39: _____	
				40: _____	

Figure J-3. Example Hunt Group Screen — Group Member Assignments (G3r)

2. Continue with “Assigning the Data Link” in [Chapter 4](#).

# Abbreviations

---

## A

- AC**  
alternating current
- ACD**  
automatic call distribution
- ADAP**  
administration and data acquisition package
- ADU**  
asynchronous data unit
- ALT**  
assembly load and test
- AMIS**  
Audio Messaging Interchange Specification
- API**  
application programming interface
- AUDIX**  
Audio Information Exchange
- AWG**  
American wire gauge
- 

## B

- BIOS**  
basic input/output system
- bps**  
bits per second
- BRI**  
basic rate interface
- BSC**  
binary synchronous communications
- BTU**  
British thermal unit

---

## C

### CCA

call classification analysis

### CDH

call data handler process

### CELP

code excited linear prediction

### CIC

customer information center

### CICS

customer information control system

### CL

control link

### CMC

Compact Modular Cabinet

### CO

central office

### COIN

central office implemented network

### COM1

serial communications port 1

### COM2

serial communications port 2

### COR

class of restriction

### COS

class of service

### CPU

central processing unit

### CSI

called subscriber information

### CTS

clear to send

---

## D

### DAC

dial access code

**DC**

direct current

**DCE**

data communications equipment

**DCIU**

data communications interface unit

**DCP**

digital communications protocol

**DCS**

distributed communications system

**DID**

direct inward dialing

**DIP**

data interface process

**DMA**

direct memory access

**DNIS**

dialed number identification service

**DOSS**

Delivery Operations Support System

**DS**

display set

**DSP**

digital signal processor

**DSU**

data service unit

**DTE**

data terminal equipment

**DTMF**

dual tone multifrequency

**DTR**

data terminal ready

---

**E**

**EIA**

Electronic Industries Association

**ESD**

electrostatic discharge

**ESS**

electronic switching system

---

## F

- F**  
fahrenheit
- FIFO**  
first-in first-out
- FOOS**  
facility out of service

---

## G

- GBCS**  
Global Business Communications Systems
- GOS**  
grade of service

---

## H

- Hz**  
hertz

---

## I

- IDI**  
isolating data interface
- IMAPI**  
INTUITY messaging application programming interface
- IMM**  
INTUITY Message Manager
- INADS**  
initialization and administration system
- I/O**  
input/output
- IRQ**  
interrupt request
- ISDN**  
integrated services digital network

---

**IVC6**

integrated voice CELP card (6 channels)

---

**K**

**Kbps**

kilobits per second

**KB**

kilobyte (1024 bytes)

**kHz**

kilohertz

---

**L**

**LAN**

local area network

**LCD**

liquid crystal display

**LED**

light-emitting diode

**LWC**

leave word calling

---

**M**

**m**

meter

**MANOOS**

manually out of service

**MB**

megabyte (one million bytes)

**MCC**

Multi-Carrier Cabinet

**MHz**

megahertz

**MO**

magneto-optical

**modem**

modulator/demodulator

**MPDM**

modular processor data module

**ms**

millisecond

**MT**

maintenance (Lucent INTUITY software component)

**MTBF**

mean time between failures

**MWI**

message-waiting indicator

---

**N**

**NW**

INTUITY AUDIX Digital Networking

---

**O**

**OA&M**

operations, administration, and maintenance

**OS**

operating system

---

**P**

**PBX**

private branch exchange

**PC**

power converter or personal computer

**PDM**

processor data module

**PEC**

price element code

**PGATE**

Processor Gateway

**PI**

Processor Interface

**POST**

power-on self test

**ppm**

parts per million

**psi**

pounds per square inch

---

**R**

**RAM**

random-access memory

**REN**

ringer equivalence number

**ROM**

read-only memory

**RSC**

Lucent's Remote Services Center

**RTS**

request to send

**RTU**

right to use

---

**S**

**SCC**

Single-Carrier Cabinet

**SCSI**

small computer systems interface

**SID**

switch integration device

**SIMM**

single in-line memory module

**SMSI**

simplified message service interface

**SW**

switch integration (Lucent INTUITY software component)

---

**T**

**TDD**

telecommunications device for the deaf

Abbreviations

AB-8

**TDM**  
time division multiplex

**T/R**  
tip/ring

**TRIP**  
tip/ring input process

**TSC**  
Lucent's Technical Services Center

**TTY**  
teletypewriter

---

**U**

**UCD**  
uniform call distribution

**UPS**  
uninterruptible power supply

---

**V**

**VM**  
INTUITY AUDIX Voice Messaging

**VP**  
voice platform (INTUITY software component)

**VR**  
INTUITY Intro Voice Response

**VROP**  
voice response output process

# Glossary

---

## NUMERIC

### 10BaseT

A network baseband medium using twisted pair wire, operating at 10 Mbits per second.

---

## A

### Activity Menu

The list of main options voiced to subscribers when they access the DEFINITY AUDIX System.

### Administration

The process of setting up a system (such as a switch or a voice mail system) so that it will function as desired. Options and defaults are normally set up (translated) by the system administrator or remote services personnel.

### Alarm Board (ALB)

For release 3.2 and earlier releases, the hardware platform (TN2169 or TN2170) that works with the Multifunction board to provide monitoring for system power and environmental status, -48 VDC to +12 VDC power conversion for the system's disk and tape drives, and remote terminal access. The TN2170 also provides SCSI-to-Ethernet connectivity to support IMAPI.

### Alarms

Hardware, software, or environmental problems that may affect system operation. These faults are classified as *major*, *minor*, or *warning*. They are recorded into an alarm log which can be accessed either locally or remotely on a terminal connected to the system.

### Analog Port Emulation

One of the two port emulation modes that the DEFINITY AUDIX system may employ. The other mode is digital port board emulation. When emulating an analog port board (the TN746), only control link (CL) integration is possible.

### Angel

A processor activity that exchanges TDM bus control messages and performs functions associated with call setup and port maintenance.

### Announcement Fragment

A numbered piece of spoken voice mail information that makes up a system message or prompt.

### Announcement Set

A set of audible menus the DEFINITY AUDIX system uses to prompt subscribers or callers for command choices.

### Asynchronous Transmission

A form of serial communications where each transmitted character is bracketed with a start bit and one or two stop bits.

### Asynchronous Data Unit (ADU)

A small device that can extend data transmission far beyond recommended Electronic Industries Association (EIA) limits over building wiring.

### **Audio Messaging Interchange Specification (AMIS)**

An analog networking feature that allows subscribers of different voice mail systems to send voice mail messages to one another.

### **Audit**

A software program that resolves filesystem incompatibilities and updates restored filesystems to a workable level of service. Audits are done automatically on a periodic basis; some can be performed on demand.

### **Audio Information Exchange (AUDIX)**

A complete voice-mail messaging system accessed and operated by touch-tone telephones and integrated with a switch.

### **AUDIX Administration and Data Acquisition Package (ADAP)**

A software package that allows the DEFINITY AUDIX administrator to transfer system subscriber, maintenance, or traffic data over the administration port to a personal computer (PC) or Work Group System (WGS).

### **Automated Attendant**

A DEFINITY AUDIX feature that allows a customer to set up a main number with a menu of options that routes callers to an appropriate department at the touch of a button. Customers can set up multiple automated attendants to accommodate their business hours or holidays.

---

## **B**

### **Backup**

A duplicate copy of a filesystem saved on a MO disk. The backup filesystem may be copied back (restored) if the active version is damaged (corrupted) or lost.

### **Balun**

On the DEFINITY AUDIX LAN connection, the adapter needed to connect the twisted-pair breakout cable to the coaxial building wire distribution system.

### **Baud**

Transmission signaling rate.

### **Boot (or Reboot)**

The operation to start a computer system by loading programs from disk to main memory (part of system initialization).

### **Boot Filesystem**

The filesystem from which the system loads its initial programs.

### **Broadcast Messaging**

A feature that enables the system administrator and other designated users to send a voice mail message to all subscribers automatically.

### **Buffer**

Memory used to compensate for time differences in transmission by temporarily storing data.

### **Busyout Service**

When a technician or administrator blocks service to keep customers from using faulty equipment until it can be repaired or tested. For instance, when ports (or a link) are busied out, subscribers who try to access their mailboxes hear a *fast busy* reorder tone. People who would normally reach DEFINITY AUDIX through Call Answering are not forwarded; they hear ringing and no answer at the number they called.

---

## C

### **Call Answer**

A feature that allows the system to answer a call and record a message when the subscriber is unavailable. Callers may be redirected to the system through the call coverage or Call Forwarding switch features. Subscribers may record a personal greeting for these callers.

### **Call Answer Language Choice**

Call answer multilingual option where a user can alternate between a primary language set and a secondary language. The two languages are administered on a per subscriber basis. If this feature is enabled, the subscriber may not use the standard DEFINITY AUDIX Multiple Personal Greetings feature.

### **Camp-On**

A system shutdown option that waits for ports to become idle before blocking service to them. This allows subscribers to finish calls in progress.

### **Central Office (CO)**

A main telephone office where private customer lines are terminated and connected to the public network through common carriers.

### **Central Processing Unit (CPU)**

The system's main processor that controls system data transfer, input/output (I/O), and logical instructions.

### **Class of Service (COS)**

The standard set of features given to subscribers when they are first administered (set up with a voice mailbox).

### **Configuration**

The particular composition and hardware selected for a system, including internal options and peripheral equipment.

### **Control Link (CL)**

The integration, or interface, between the DEFINITY AUDIX System and the switch that enables the transmission of control messages from the DEFINITY AUDIX System to the switch over a DCIU data link. The control messages are transmitted over a separate cable connection and carry information such as calling-party identification and message-waiting indicator status and control.

### **Control Link Mode**

The type of switch-link integration for which the DEFINITY AUDIX System, R2.0 or later, is connected to the switch via analog-line card emulation and a digital connection.

---

## D

### **Delivery Operations Support System (DOSS) Configurator**

Lucent Technologies' algorithmic system for configuring products for customers' specific needs.

### **Digital Communications Protocol (DCP)**

An Lucent Technologies proprietary protocol for networking remote communication systems.

#### **DCP Mode 1**

A Lucent Technologies proprietary Digital Communications Protocol (DCP) connection using a data rate of 56 Kbps for AUDIX Digital Networking. DCP Mode 1 uses a DS1 facility on the switch or a dedicated facility on the switch or a dedicated facility on a T1 carrier.

#### **DCP Mode 2**

DCP Mode 2 is an asynchronous, low-speed (9600 bps) connection for AUDIX Digital Networking. DCP Mode 2 uses a modem/data module or modem/Asynchronous Data Unit (ADU) arrangement and connects over analog or voice-grade data lines. DCP Mode 2 Digital Networking connections are configured using EIA RS-232 Asynchronous protocol. These connections are sometimes called EIA RS-232 or RS-232 ASYNC connections.

#### **DCP Mode 3**

A DCP connection using a data rate of 64 Kbps for AUDIX Digital Networking. DCP Mode 3 uses a DS1 or ISDN facility on the switch or a dedicated facility on a T1 carrier.

### **Default**

A value that is automatically supplied if no other value is specified.

### **Digital Port (DP) Emulation**

The DEFINITY AUDIX system's method of operating within a switch as a digital port circuit pack—either a TN2181 or a TN754.

### **Digital Signal Processor (DSP)**

Programmed RAM chips on the TN568 that provide signaling, power-level control, speech coding, and data processing.

### **Display Set (DS) Integration**

A new term that replaces the term digital port integration for R3.2 and later. It refers to the use of the display and other messages sent from the switch to the port board for providing voice mail integration with the switch. Integration with the switch is achieved via display set messages. The messages carry information such as calling party identification and message waiting indicator status and control.

### **Disconnect Signaling Detection**

Signaling from the CO to the PBX which indicates that the far end caller has hung up.

### **Dual Language Greetings**

When the Call Answer Language Choice is in effect, the subscriber can record personalized greetings for each of the languages listed as the primary and secondary announcement sets. The subscriber instructs the caller to enter \*1 to switch to the alternate language.

---

## E

### Errors

Problems detected by the system during automatic self-tests and recorded in an error log. Errors can produce an alarm (fault) if they exceed a threshold.

### Events

Occurrences such as inline errors, maintenance procedure failures, alarms, errors, or transitions into or out of the AUDIX or OA&M states which are recorded in an events log.

---

## F

### Field

An area on a form, menu, or report where information can be typed or displayed.

### Filesystems

A collection of related files (programs or data) stored on disk that are required to initialize a DEFINITY AUDIX System and provide full service.

### Flashware

Code that is stored in electrically reprogrammable memory on the DEFINITY AUDIX System. This programming is retained over power outages but can be reprogrammed automatically on board during initialization.

### Forms

Terminal screens of information that allow data to be displayed or changed.

---

## G

### Generic Disk

A copy of the standard software and standalone utilities that is shipped with a new system.

### Graceful Shutdown

Taking the DEFINITY AUDIX System offline (to the maintenance shutdown state) using RESET SYSTEM SHUTDOWN in a camp-on manner.

### Ground Isolation

Ground isolation prevents an alternate return current path at the connecting interface. Return currents pass through the signal wire(s) in the interface connector cable rather than via "green wire ground".

### Guest Password

A feature that allows people who are not subscribers to leave messages on the system by dialing a subscriber's extension and entering a system-wide guest password.

---

## H

### Hard Disk Drive

The disk drive the DEFINITY AUDIX system uses to actively save voice messages, personal greetings, subscriber profiles, automated attendants, and other data. The hard disk drive also stores the system's AUDIX software.

### Header

Information that the system creates to identify a message. A message header includes the originator or recipient, type of message, creation time, and delivery time.

### Hunt Group

A group of ports on a switch usually administered to search for available ports in a circular pattern.

---

## I

### Initialization

The process of bringing a system to a predetermined operational state. The start-up procedure tests hardware and flashware; loads the boot filesystem programs; locates, mounts, and opens other required filesystems; and starts normal service.

### Initialization and Administration System (INADS)

A maintenance system used by remote technicians to track alarms.

### INTUITY Message Manager

A personal computer application that is used for the retrieval and display of message headers, addressing to lists, managing personal greetings, and for creating, forwarding, and replying to voice mail messages.

---

## L

### Leave Word Calling

A switch feature that allows the calling party to leave a standard (nonvoice) message for the called party using a feature button or dial access code.

### Light-emitting Diode (LED)

Release 4.0 uses three LEDs on the system's faceplate to report the system's status and to provide alarm and diagnostic information.

For Release 3.2 and earlier releases, a red-light indicator on the system faceplate panel that shows the status of operations and possible fault conditions. An unlit LED indicates a healthy system. When flashing, the LED indicates a software problem. When it is steadily lit, a hardware problem exists.

### Liquid Crystal Display (LCD)

For release 3.2 and earlier releases, the 10-character alphanumeric display on the DEFINITY AUDIX faceplate panel that automatically shows status of the system including alarms.

### Local Area Network (LAN)

A short distance data communications network used to link computers and peripheral devices under some form of standard control

### Local Maintenance Terminal (LMT)

A display terminal located near the DEFINITY AUDIX System and the switch. It is temporarily attached to the DEFINITY AUDIX during an on-site service visit.

### Login

A unique code used to gain approved access to a subscriber's voice mailbox or to a display terminal.

---

## M

### Magneto-optical (MO) Disk

The storage medium used by the magneto-optical disk drive to store backups and other information. MO disks are removable and rewritable.

### Magneto-optical (MO) Disk Drive

The device used to store nightly and weekly backups of customer data, install new software releases, restore the system and remove core dumps and other maintenance information. The drive stores information on an MO disk.

### Mailbox

A portion of disk memory given to each subscriber for creating and storing outgoing and incoming messages.

### Message-waiting Indicator (MWI)

A device on a telephone, either a message-waiting lamp or a display screen, that alerts subscribers to new messages.

### Message-waiting Lamp

An LED on a telephone that alerts subscribers to new messages.

### Migration

The replacement of an old hardware or software release with a new one. Changes from DEFINITY AUDIX system releases earlier than 4.0 to Release 4.0 are called *migrations*.

### Modem

A modulator/demodulator used for transmitting analog signals across telephone lines.

### Multifunction Board (MFB)

For release 3.2 and earlier releases, the hardware platform (TN566B, 386 version and TN567, 486 version) which holds the central processing unit, controllers, memory devices, and signal processors that make a DEFINITY AUDIX System operational. For release 4.0 the TN568 is the only circuit pack and therefore performs all operations for the DEFINITY AUDIX system.

### Multilingual System

A DEFINITY AUDIX System containing primary and secondary language announcement sets. A large (40 hour) system will hold up to nine different language sets. The Telecommunications Device for the Deaf (TDD) announcement set is treated as a multilingual option.

## N

### **Native Mode**

The ability of the switch to recognize the DEFINITY AUDIX as a DEFINITY AUDIX circuit pack. With native mode support, the switch reserves one slot for the DEFINITY AUDIX system. Additionally, the switch is able to correctly identify the DEFINITY AUDIX board in alarms sent to the Remote Services Center (RSC).

### **Non-native Mode**

Without native mode, the TN568 slot is provisioned as a TN754, TN2181 or TN746B. The second slot occupied by the DEFINITY AUDIX system Release 4.0 is not reserved, and alarms are reported as alarms for a TN754, TN2181, or TN746B.

### **Null Modem Cable**

A cable that transposes transmit and receive leads on an RS-232 connection.

---

## O

### **Operating System (OS)**

The set of programs that runs hardware and interprets software commands.

### **Operations, Administration, and Maintenance (OA&M)**

A state of system operation where core processes of the system are accessed, including system initialization, resource configuration, forms interface, entry into the maintenance subsystem, and filesystem access. Also entered when customer data must be restored.

### **Outcalling**

A feature that allows the system to dial subscribers' numbers or go to pagers to inform them they have new messages.

---

## P

### **Personal Greetings**

Messages DEFINITY AUDIX subscribers create to greet callers when the subscribers are unavailable. Subscribers can change and administer personal greetings as necessary.

### **Port**

A connection or link between two devices, allowing information to travel through it to a desired location. For example, a switch port connects to a DEFINITY AUDIX port to allow a subscriber on a voice terminal to leave a message.

### **Protocol**

A set of specific rules, procedures, or conventions relating to forms and timing of data transmission between two devices.

---

## R

### Reboot

A system *reboot* is done to clear major system problems (such as corrupt program memory). It also runs automatically whenever the system is powered up. Also see *boot*.

### Remote Field Update

A set of software changes on a given release that is transmitted from a central location to customer equipment. Changes are generally restricted to serious bug fixes and are limited in volume.

### Reply Loop Escape

Allows the subscriber the option to return to responding to a message after trying to reply to a non-subscriber message.

### Restart

During maintenance, a system *restart* brings the system software back into full service, usually after an administrative shutdown. This is often done to try to clear software problems.

## RISC

Reduced Instruction Set Computer. Refers to computers based on an unusually high speed processing technology that uses a far simpler set of operating commands.

---

## S

### Sanity and Control Interface (SAKI)

An integrated circuit that receives and transmits TDM bus control messages and monitors the sanity of the angel processor.

### Shutdown State

State of system operation where either a technician can shut down the system for maintenance, or where a critical error condition brings down the system. In either case, filesystems are closed and the system can be powered down and removed from the carrier.

### Small Computer Systems Interface (SCSI)

An interface standard defining the physical, logical, and electrical connections to computer system peripherals such as the MO disk and hard disk drives.

### Standalone Utility

A software utility with options that include disk drive initialization, copying files from a generic MO disk onto the customer's disk, and map partition modification.

### Subscriber Specific Announcement Set

When the Multilingual feature is enabled, each subscriber form has three fields specifying the announcement set with which the subscriber will interact with the system once they log in, and the two announcement sets with which callers to the subscriber's mailbox can interact with the system.

## T

### **Transmission Control Protocol/Internet Protocol (TCP/IP)**

A set of protocol standards which allows a process on one machine to send data to a process on another machine. Communication may be full or half duplex. TCP/IP includes support for multiple operating systems and machine architectures.

### **Telecommunications Device for the Deaf (TDD)**

A category of DEFINITY AUDIX features, including personal greetings and announcement sets, that exchange text messages with subscribers or callers using teletypewriters.

### **Teletypewriter (TTY)**

A device that uses Baudot tones to transmit text-based telephone messages for the hearing impaired. Subscribers or callers can use teletypewriters to access the DEFINITY AUDIX system if TDD features are enabled.

### **Time Division Multiplex (TDM) Bus**

The interface between the DEFINITY AUDIX System and the switch that carries digitally-encoded voice waveforms and circuit-switched data.

### **TN568 Circuit Pack**

The circuit board that performs the main processing functions on DEFINITY AUDIX system Release 4.0.

---

## U

### **Update**

A limited incremental change on an existing release involving software only.

### **Upgrade**

The replacement of one release with a new release. This may involve software, flashware, hardware, and/or data.

---

## V

### **Voice Port**

An electrical pathway that connects calls between two devices, such as telephones, switches, or voice messaging systems.

# Index

---

## Numerics

- 116A opto-isolator, [2-6](#)
  - 715 terminals, [3-1](#)
  - 7400A data modules, [2-21](#)
- 

## A

- Acceptance tests
    - add subscribers, [7-2](#)
    - Call Answer feature, [7-3](#)
    - clearing logs, [7-8](#)
    - LAN, [7-6](#)
    - MO disk, [7-4](#)
    - Voice Mail feature, [7-3](#)
  - ACD field, [4-13](#)
  - Activating
    - AMIS, [C-2](#)
    - customer options, [3-3](#)
  - Active Station Ringing field, [4-30](#)
  - Active? field, [4-17](#), [4-20](#)
  - ADAP, [8-3](#)
    - administering, [8-5](#)
  - Adaptor cable
    - connecting, [2-6](#), [2-9](#)
    - figure, [2-5](#)
  - Adding language sets, [G-3](#)
  - Address ranges, [C-5](#)
  - Adjunct names
    - assigning, [4-10](#)
  - Administration
    - activate basic features, [5-17](#)
    - activate parameters, [5-17](#)
    - add initial subscribers, [8-3](#)
    - add MO Disk, [5-19](#)
    - alarm origination, [10-1](#)
    - alarm status, [5-24](#)
    - assign machine ID, [5-6](#)
    - assign the time zone, [5-4](#)
    - clearing logs, [7-8](#)
    - completing, [8-5](#)
    - DEFINITY AUDIX, [5-2](#)
      - options, [3-1](#)
    - dual, [3-1](#)
    - initial, [5-1](#)
    - MO disk, [10-5](#)
    - overview, [4-4](#)
    - reboot, [5-14](#)
    - set clock, [5-2](#)
    - subscriber, [8-1](#)
    - switch, [4-1](#)
    - switch names audit, [5-16](#), [5-21](#)
    - switch translations audit, [5-7](#)
    - switch-link, [5-10](#)
    - system parameter limits, [5-11](#)
    - terminal, [3-1](#)
    - voice ports, [4-20](#), [5-8](#)
    - walk-through, [10-5](#)
  - ADUs
    - terminal connection, [2-19](#)
  - Alarm
    - clearing logs, [7-8](#)
    - origination, [10-1](#)
      - configuring, [2-9](#)
      - switch, [2-11](#)
      - worksheet, [C-13](#)
    - relay, [2-9](#)
    - status, [5-24](#)
  - All? field, [4-18](#), [4-20](#)
  - AMIS Analog Networking, [D-1](#)
    - worksheet, [C-2](#)
  - AMIS Analog Networking? field, [3-4](#)
  - Announcement set identifiers, [G-1](#)
  - Assignment
    - display button, [4-4](#)
    - feature button, [4-4](#)
  - Att. Call Waiting Indication field
    - analog emulation, [J-6](#)
  - Audible Message Waiting field, [4-30](#)
    - analog emulation, [J-6](#)
  - Audit
    - switch names, [5-16](#), [5-21](#)
    - switch translations, [5-7](#)
  - AUDIX Name field
    - Station screen
      - analog emulation, [J-6](#)
  - AUDIX state
    - LEDs, [2-8](#)
  - Auth Code field, [6-3](#)
  - Auto Answer field, [4-29](#)
    - analog emulation, [J-6](#)
  - Auto Select any Idle Appearance field, [4-29](#)
  - Automated Attendant, [6-2](#), [D-5](#)
    - hunt group, [6-3](#)
    - incoming trunk, [6-4](#)
    - Listed Directory Number, [6-4](#)
    - night service, [6-3](#)
    - phantom station, [6-2](#)
    - routing table, [6-4](#)
    - substitute strategies, [6-5](#)
- 

## B

- BCC field, [4-28](#)
  - analog emulation, [J-5](#)
- Bootup
  - installation, [2-2](#)
  - LED sequence, [2-7](#)
- Bridged Call Alerting field, [4-29](#)

analog emulation, [J-6](#)

Bridged call appearances, [4-32](#), [F-27](#)

Bulletin boards, [D-8](#)

Busy? field, [4-17](#), [4-20](#)

Button assignments, [4-3](#)

bridged appearances, [F-26](#)

voice ports, [4-3](#), [4-32](#)

## C

Call answer

announcement sets, [C-11](#)

Call appearances

port 12, [4-31](#)

ports 9-11, [4-32](#)

Call coverage path

subscribers, [4-18](#)

voice ports, [4-16](#)

Call forwarding

all calls, [6-3](#)

Call Waiting Indication field

analog emulation, [J-6](#)

Calling Party Number to INTUITY AUDIX?

field, [4-15](#)

Calls Warning Port field, [4-14](#)

Calls Warning Threshold field, [4-14](#)

Carrier

configuration, [A-1](#)

figure, [4-7](#)

restrictions, [2-4](#)

CDR Privacy field, [J-6](#)

changing

emulation

analog to digital, [I-1](#)

integration

CL-analog to DS-digital, [I-3](#)

DS to CL, [I-9](#)

Circuit packs

identifying, [4-6](#)

screen, [4-7](#)

analog emulation, [J-2](#)

TN568, [4-6](#), [4-9](#)

analog emulation, [J-3](#)

TN750 Announcement, [6-6](#)

Class of Restriction (COR)

Announcements screen, [6-7](#)

Data Module screen, [4-38](#)

defining, [4-20](#)

Hunt Group screen, [4-14](#)

Station screen, [4-28](#)

analog emulation, [J-5](#)

digital worksheet, [B-4](#)

Class of Service (COS)

Announcement screen, [6-7](#)

Data Module screen, [4-39](#)

defining, [4-20](#), [C-9](#)

optimizing, [8-2](#)

Station screen, [4-29](#)

analog emulation, [J-5](#)

digital port, [B-4](#)

Subscriber screen, [8-4](#)

Class of Service screen, [8-2](#)

Clock administration

set, [5-2](#)

Code field, [4-9](#)

analog emulation, [J-3](#)

Components

missing, [1-4](#)

required and optional, [1-3](#)

Confidence checks, [7-1](#)

Configuring the switch, [1-2](#)

Connecting block, [1-5](#), [2-12](#)

Connectivity diagrams, [1-3](#)

display set, [1-4](#)

LAN, [1-5](#)

terminals, [2-14](#)

7400 data modules, [2-22](#)

ADUs, [2-19](#)

direct connection, [2-15](#)

modem, [2-17](#)

Connectivity, system adapter cable, [2-9](#)

Control-link

configuration, [1-1](#)

migration, [F-1](#)

COR, see Class of Restriction

COS, see Class of Service

Coverage Criteria field, [4-17](#), [4-19](#)

Coverage Message Retrieval field

analog emulation, [J-6](#)

subscriber, [9-1](#)

voice port, [4-29](#)

Coverage Module field, [4-30](#)

Coverage Path field

automated attendant, [6-3](#)

Hunt Group screen, [4-14](#)

Station screen, [4-29](#)

subscriber, [9-1](#)

station screen

analog emulation, [J-5](#)

Coverage Path Number field, [4-17](#), [4-19](#)

Coverage paths

multiple, [6-8](#)

screen, [4-16](#)

subscriber, [4-18](#)

subscriber, [4-19](#)

voice port, [4-16](#)

worksheet

digital port, [B-3](#)

Coverage Points field, [4-20](#)

Customer acceptance tasks, [10-1](#)

Customer options

activate, [3-3](#)

worksheet, [C-2](#)

Customized fragments, [G-1](#)

---

## D

### Data Extension field

Station screen, [4-38](#)

### Data Module field, [4-29](#)

### Data Restriction field, [4-30](#)

analog emulation, [J-6](#)

### DCS

Expert Agent Selection, [7-3](#)

switch number, [7-2](#)

### Definity

switch administration, [4-1](#)

### DEFINITY AUDIX

figure, [2-3](#)

function keys, [3-2](#)

group extension, [B-7](#)

installing, [2-5](#)

login, [2-25](#), [5-2](#)

queues, [B-7](#), [B-8](#)

slot locations, [2-4](#)

voice ports, [B-3](#)

### DEFINITY AUDIX, server, [1-1](#)

### Definity switches, [4-1](#)

### Diagram

#### connectivity

DS integration, [1-4](#)

LAN, [1-5](#)

### Digital networking

administering, [4-37](#)

availability, [4-5](#)

### Direct Inward Dialing (DID), [6-8](#)

### Disp Client Redir field, [4-30](#)

### Display buttons, [4-34](#)

assignments, [4-4](#)

### Display Language field, [4-30](#)

### Display Module field, [4-29](#)

### Display Set

configuration, [1-1](#)

connections, [2-13](#)

diagram, [1-4](#)

### Distinctive Audible Alert field

analog emulation, [J-6](#)

### Don't Answer? field, [4-17](#), [4-20](#)

### Dual terminal administration, [3-1](#)

### Duplicating voice ports, [4-34](#)

---

## E

### Emulation

changing analog to digital, [1-1](#)

### Error logs, clearing, [7-8](#)

### Expected Call Handling Time (sec) field, [4-14](#)

### Expert Agent Selection, [6-8](#)

DCS network, [7-3](#)

hunt group, [4-35](#)

Exporting voice ports, [F-4](#)

### Extension field

Announcement screen, [6-7](#)

Group Member Assignments Entries  
screen, [4-37](#)

Station screen, [4-28](#), [J-5](#)

### External modem

connectivity diagram, [2-10](#)

option settings, [H-5](#)

---

## F

### Feature buttons, [4-33](#)

assignments, [4-4](#)

### Feature Module field, [4-30](#)

### First Announcement Delay field, [4-16](#), [6-7](#)

### First Announcement Extension field, [4-16](#), [6-7](#)

### Function Keys, DEFINITY AUDIX, [3-2](#)

---

## G

### Group Extension field

automated attendant, [6-3](#)

hunt group screen, [4-13](#), [4-37](#)

### Group Name field

automated attendant, [6-3](#)

Hunt Group screen, [4-13](#)

### Group Number field

Hunt Group screen, [4-13](#)

group member assignments, [4-37](#)

### Group Type field

automated attendant, [6-3](#)

Hunt Group screen, [4-13](#)

group member assignments, [4-37](#)

---

## H

### H.320 Conversion field, [4-30](#)

### Hard Disk

figure, [2-3](#), [F-14](#)

### Hardware

assembly, installing, [2-2](#)

connecting, [2-14](#)

finalizing, [2-25](#)

testing, [2-25](#)

### Hours of Voice Storage Purchased field, [3-4](#)

### Humidity requirements, [1-2](#)

### Hunt group

#### assigning

analog emulation, [J-7](#)

voice ports, [4-35](#)

Automated Attendant, [6-3](#)

creating, [4-11](#)

expert agent selection, [6-8](#)  
Group Member Assignments, [4-36](#), [I-15](#)  
    analog port, [J-8](#)  
night destination, [6-8](#)  
Recorded Announcement, [6-7](#)  
removing ports, [I-14](#)  
screen, [4-11](#), [I-14](#)  
    migration, [F-5](#)  
subscriber coverage point, [4-18](#)

---

## I

Identifiers  
    announcement set, [G-1](#)  
Identifying  
    cirucit pack, [4-6](#)  
Idle Appearance Preference field, [4-30](#)  
IMAPI access? field, [8-2](#)  
IMAPI Voice File Transfer? field, [8-2](#)  
INADS, [10-1](#)  
Initialization string, [10-2](#)  
Installation  
    hardware, [2-1](#)  
    hardware assembly, [2-2](#)  
    new language sets, [G-3](#)  
    prerequisites, [1-1](#)  
    printer, [2-24](#)  
    safety, [1-3](#)  
    site verification, [1-2](#)  
    system assembly, [2-5](#)  
    tasks, [2-1](#)  
    terminals, [2-13](#)  
    tools, [1-2](#)  
Integration  
    changing  
        CL-analog to DS-digital, [I-3](#)  
        DS-digital to CL digital, [I-9](#)  
ISDN Call Disp field, [4-14](#)

---

## J

Joint acceptance tests, [7-6](#)

---

## L

LAN  
    acceptance tests, [7-6](#)  
    connecting block, [1-4](#)  
    connection, [2-11](#)  
    connectivity diagram, [1-5](#)  
    system parameters, [5-12](#)  
    testing, [7-7](#)  
Language sets, [G-3](#)

LDN  
    see Listed Directory Number (LDN)  
Leave Word Calling (LWC), [9-1](#)  
LEDs  
    AUDIX state, [2-8](#)  
    bootup sequence, [2-7](#), [F-16](#)  
Light Emitting Diodes, see LEDs  
Linkage field  
    Coverage Path screen  
        subscriber, [4-20](#)  
        voice port, [4-18](#)  
    multiple coverage paths, [6-8](#)  
List Configuration Screen, [2-27](#)  
Listed Directory Number (LDN), [6-8](#)  
Lock Messages field  
    Station screen, [4-28](#)  
    analog emulation, [J-5](#)  
Login, [5-15](#)  
    DEFINITY AUDIX, [2-25](#), [5-2](#)  
LWC Activation field  
    Station screen, [4-29](#)  
    analog emulation, [J-6](#)  
    subscriber, [9-1](#)  
LWC Reception field  
    Hunt Group screen, [4-16](#)  
    Station screen, [4-29](#)  
    analog emulation, [J-6](#)  
    subscriber, [9-2](#)  
LWC, see Leave Word Calling

---

## M

Machine  
    form, [C-4](#)  
    ID, [C-4](#)  
    parameters, [5-6](#)  
Maximum Number of Digital Networking Ports  
    field, [3-4](#)  
Maximum Number of IMAPI Sessions field, [3-4](#)  
Maximum Number of Voice Ports field, [3-4](#)  
Message Center field, [4-15](#)  
Message Delivery, [D-1](#)  
Message Manager  
    Class of Service, [8-2](#), [8-4](#)  
    connecting block, [1-4](#)  
    connectivity, [1-5](#)  
    requirements, [1-1](#)  
    system parameters, [5-12](#)  
    testing, [7-7](#)  
Message Server Name field  
    analog emulation, [J-6](#)  
Message Waiting Indicator  
    clearing, [9-1](#)  
    Station screen  
        analog port, [J-3](#)  
        subscriber, [9-1](#)  
        voice ports, [4-20](#)

Message Waiting Indicator field

Station screen

analog emulation, [J-6](#)

Migrations, [F-1](#)

additional installation tasks, [F-29](#)

backing up data, [F-7](#)

backups, [F-9](#)

checklist, [F-3](#)

connecting tape drive, [F-6](#)

exporting voice ports, [F-4](#)

materials needed, [F-2](#)

Missing parts, [1-4](#)

MO disk

adding, [5-19](#)

status, [10-1](#), [10-4](#)

testing, [7-4](#)

MO Disk Test Results screen, [7-5](#)

MO hard drive

figure, [2-3](#), [F-14](#)

Modems

administration terminal, [2-16](#)

Initialization string, [10-2](#)

option settings, [H-5](#)

MO-Disk screen, [5-20](#)

Multilingual language set choice, [C-11](#)

Multilingual? field, [3-4](#), [C-2](#)

MWI see Message Waiting Indicator

voice port, [4-18](#)

---

## O

Off Premise Station field

analog emulation, [J-6](#)

Option administration, [3-1](#)

Option settings

7400A modem, [H-10](#)

7400B modem, [H-10](#)

modem, [H-5](#)

generic, [H-7](#)

Paradyne Comsphere

3810 and 3820, [H-6](#)

3910, [H-6](#)

terminal, [H-1](#)

US Robotics Sportster 33.6, [H-5](#)

Optional features, [D-1](#)

Opto-isolator, [2-6](#)

Outcalling, [8-4](#)

screen, [D-9](#)

Outcalling field, [8-2](#)

---

## P

Parameters, activating, [5-17](#)

Parts

missing, [1-4](#)

required and optional, [1-3](#)

PBX

carrier reconfiguration, [A-1](#)

Per Button Ring Control field, [4-29](#)

Phantom stations, [6-2](#)

Point1 field, [4-18](#)

Port

connections, [2-13](#)

voice, [5-8](#)

digital emulation worksheet, [B-3](#)

Port C connection, [2-9](#)

Port Emulation Type field, [3-3](#), [C-2](#)

Port field, [J-5](#)

Announcement screen, [6-7](#)

Station screen, [4-28](#)

migration, [F-26](#)

Power warning, [2-2](#)

Powering down the switch, [2-2](#)

Prerequisites, [1-1](#)

Printer installation, [2-24](#)

Project review, [10-5](#)

Protect field, [6-7](#)

---

## N

Name field, [4-38](#)

Announcements screen, [6-7](#)

Circuit Pack screen, [4-10](#)

analog emulation, [J-3](#)

Hunt Group screen, [4-37](#)

Station screen, [4-29](#)

analog emulation, [J-5](#)

migration, [F-26](#)

Names

containing extensions, [9-2](#)

restrictions for subscribers, [9-2](#)

switch directory, [9-2](#)

Native mode, [4-4](#)

Networking ports, [4-37](#)

Next Path Number field

Coverage Path screen

subscriber, [4-20](#)

switch recorded announcement, [6-8](#)

voice port, [4-18](#)

Night Destination field, [6-4](#)

Night Service Destination field

Hunt Group screen, [4-14](#)

Listed Directory Number, [6-8](#)

Night Service field, [6-4](#)

Number of Rings field

Call Coverage Path screen

subscriber, [4-20](#)

---

## Q

- Queue field, [6-3](#)
    - Announcement screen, [6-7](#)
    - Hunt Group screen, [4-13](#)
  - Queue Length field
    - Announcement screen, [6-7](#)
    - Call Coverage Path screen, [B-8](#)
    - Hunt Group screen, [4-14](#)
- 

## R

- R Balance Network field
    - analog emulation, [J-6](#)
  - Rate field, [6-7](#)
  - Reboot, [5-14](#), [10-2](#)
  - Recorded Announcement, [6-6](#)
    - hunt group, [6-7](#)
    - screen, [6-6](#)
  - Redirect Notification field, [4-29](#)
    - analog emulation, [J-6](#)
  - Remote Access connection, [2-9](#)
  - Requirements, general site, [1-2](#)
  - Restrict Last Appearance field, [4-30](#), [F-26](#)
- 

## S

- SAC/Go to Cover? field, [4-18](#), [4-20](#)
- Safety considerations, [1-3](#)
- Screens
  - DEFINITY AUDIX
    - administration log, [5-22](#)
    - alarm report, [5-24](#)
    - audit results, [5-7](#), [5-16](#), [5-21](#)
    - change station, [F-4](#)
    - class of service, [8-2](#)
    - date and time, [5-2](#)
    - DEFINITY AUDIX administration, [F-7](#)
    - disk test results, [7-4](#)
    - LAN results, [7-6](#)
    - list configuration, [2-27](#)
    - machine, [C-4](#)
    - machine profile, [5-6](#)
    - MO disk, [5-20](#)
    - MO disk test results, [7-5](#)
    - outcalling, [D-9](#)
    - reset system OA&M, [F-8](#), [F-17](#)
    - reset system reboot, [5-14](#)
    - save nightly, [F-9](#)
    - save voice, [F-11](#)
    - save weekly, [F-10](#), [F-11](#)

- status mo-disk, [10-4](#)
- subscriber, [7-2](#), [8-4](#)
  - initial, [8-3](#)
  - test, [7-2](#)
  - worksheet, [C-9](#)
- switch link embedded, [5-10](#)
- switch time zone, [5-4](#)
  - worksheet, [C-6](#)
- system-parameter limits, [5-11](#)
- system-parameters
  - customer-options, [3-3](#), [4-2](#), [C-2](#), [F-20](#)
  - system-parameters features, [5-17](#), [C-7](#)
  - system-parameters IMAPI-options, [5-13](#), [C-3](#)
  - system-parameters maintenance, [10-1](#), [10-3](#)
    - worksheet, [C-13](#)
  - test LAN results, [7-6](#)
  - voice group, [5-9](#), [F-22](#)
- switch
  - call appearances, [4-30](#)
  - circuit pack, [4-7](#)
  - coverage path, [4-16](#)
  - data module
    - digital networking, [4-38](#)
  - date and time, [5-3](#)
  - hunt group, [4-11](#)
    - group member assignments, [4-36](#), [F-28](#)
  - recorded announcements, [6-6](#)
  - station, [4-21](#)
    - display buttons assignments, [4-33](#)
    - feature buttons, [4-33](#)
    - system-parameters imapi-options, [5-13](#)
    - system-parameters limits, [C-5](#)
- Security Code field
  - Hunt Group screen, [4-13](#)
  - Station screen, [4-28](#)
    - analog emulation, [J-5](#)
- Select Last Used Appearance field, [4-30](#)
- Server, DEFINITY AUDIX, [1-1](#)
- Sfx field, [4-9](#)
  - analog emulation, [J-3](#)
- Shutdown warning, [2-2](#)
- Site requirements, [1-2](#)
- Slot field, [4-9](#), [J-3](#)
- Slots
  - DEFINITY AUDIX system, [2-4](#)
  - restrictions, [2-4](#)
    - worksheet, [A-1](#)
- SMDR or CDR Privacy field, [4-29](#)
- Station/Group Status field, [4-17](#), [4-20](#)
- Stations
  - administering, [4-20](#)
  - digital worksheet, [B-3](#)
  - completing, [4-21](#)

screens, [4-23](#)  
G3r/R5r, [J-4](#)  
port 12, [4-23](#)

Status MO-Disk screen, [10-4](#)

Subscriber

adding, [C-9](#)  
administering, [8-1](#)  
DEFINITY AUDIX, [8-1](#)  
switch, [B-6](#)  
call coverage path, [4-18](#)  
limits, [C-5](#)  
name restrictions, [9-2](#)  
screen, [C-9](#)

Subscriber Screen, [8-4](#)

Switch

AC-powered, [2-14](#)  
administration, [4-1](#)  
initial, [B-1](#)  
recorded announcements, [D-10](#)  
time zone screen, [C-6](#)

audits, [4-20](#)  
carrier, [4-7](#)  
compatible, [2-1](#)  
configuring, [1-2](#)  
link parameters, [5-10](#)  
names audit, [5-16](#), [5-21](#)  
native mode, [4-4](#)  
translations audit, [5-7](#)

Switch Integration Type field, [3-3](#)

Switchhook Flash field

analog emulation, [J-6](#)

System

administration, [5-2](#)  
LED states, [2-7](#)

System adaptor cable

connecting, [2-6](#), [2-9](#)  
figure, [2-5](#)  
port connections, [2-13](#)

System parameters

features screen, [C-7](#)  
Intuity Message Manager, [5-12](#)  
limits, [5-11](#)  
limits screen, [C-5](#)  
maintenance screen, [10-1](#), [10-3](#), [C-13](#)

function keys, [3-2](#)  
installing, [2-13](#)  
modem connection, [2-16](#)  
option settings, [H-1](#)

Test

add subscribers, [7-2](#)  
alarm origination, [10-1](#)  
short, [10-5](#)  
call answer, [7-3](#)  
hardware, [2-25](#)  
mo-disk, [7-4](#)  
voice mail, [7-3](#)

Test LAN Results screen, [7-6](#)

Tests field

analog emulation, [J-6](#)  
Time Warning Port field, [4-14](#)  
Time Warning Threshold field, [4-14](#)  
Time zones, [5-4](#), [C-6](#)  
Time/date requests, [4-20](#)

TN field

Hunt Group screen, [4-14](#)  
Station screen, [4-30](#)

TN568

figure, [2-3](#), [F-14](#)

TN750, [6-6](#)

Toll fraud, [B-4](#)

Transfer Into Mailbox

configuration, [4-35](#)  
transfer port, [4-29](#)

Translation overview tables, [4-2](#)

Type field

Announcements screen, [6-7](#)  
Station screen  
analog emulation, [J-5](#)  
migration, [F-26](#)  
station screen, [4-28](#)

---

## V

Vector field

Hunt Group screen, [4-13](#)

Voice ports

button assignments, [4-4](#)  
decreasing, [I-13](#)  
DEFINITY AUDIX, [5-8](#)  
feature buttons, [4-33](#)  
field assignments, [4-2](#)  
rules for administering, [4-21](#)  
switch

administering, [4-20](#)  
rules, [4-21](#), [J-3](#)

call appearance buttons, [4-30](#), [4-31](#)

call coverage path, [4-16](#)

display buttons, [4-33](#)

duplicating, [4-34](#)

analog port, [J-7](#)

---

## T

Tables

switch translation, [4-2](#)

Temperature requirements, [1-2](#)

Terminals

7400A data module connection, [2-21](#)  
ADU connection, [2-19](#)  
configuring, [E-1](#)  
direct connections, [2-14](#)  
dual administration, [3-1](#)  
emulation, [5-2](#)

- feature buttons, [4-33](#)
- feature options, [J-4](#)
- Station screen, [4-21](#), [J-4](#)
  - analog emulation, [J-4](#)
- worksheet, [B-3](#)

voice ports

- administering
    - tasks, [4-6](#)
  - button assignments, [4-3](#)
- 

## W

Walk-through, [10-5](#)

Warning Port field, [4-14](#)

### Worksheets

- acceptance tests, [7-1](#)
- call coverage path, [B-10](#)
- DCP Mode 2
  - digital networking, [B-12](#)
- DCS
  - networking ports, [B-11](#)
- hardware installation, [2-1](#), [4-1](#)
- hunt group
  - digital emulation, [B-6](#)
- station
  - digital emulation, [B-3](#)
- subscriber administration, [8-1](#)
- system administration, [3-1](#), [5-1](#), [6-2](#)